



Bundesamt
für Sicherheit in der
Informationstechnik



Common Criteria Protection Profile

Card Operating System Generation 2 (PP COS G2)



BSI-CC-PP-0082

Approved by the
Federal Office of Information Security

Foreword

This Protection Profile ‘Card Operating System (PP COS)’ is issued by Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik, Germany.

The document has been prepared as a Protection Profile (PP) following the rules and formats of Common Criteria version 3.1 [1], [2], [3], Revision 4.

Correspondence and comments to this Protection Profile should be referred to:

Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik (BSI)
Godesberger Allee 185-189
53175 Bonn

Telefon: +49 2 28 99 95 82-0
Telefax: +49 2 28 99 95 82-54 00
E-Mail: bsi@bsi.bund.de

Document history

Version	Date	Changes	Commentary
1.0	23 rd August 2013	Final version for evaluation	

Current Version: 1.0 (23rd August 2013)

Contents

1	PP Introduction	9
1.1	PP reference	9
1.2	TOE Overview	9
1.2.1	TOE definition and operational usage	9
1.2.2	TOE major security features for operational use	10
1.2.3	TOE type	10
1.2.4	Non-TOE hardware/software/firmware	11
2	Conformance Claims	13
2.1	CC Conformance Claim	13
2.2	PP Claim	13
2.3	Package Claim	13
2.4	Conformance Claim Rationale	13
2.5	Conformance statement	14
3	Security Problem Definition	15
3.1	Assets and External Entities	15
3.2	Threats	16
3.3	Organisational Security Policies	18
3.4	Assumptions	19
4	Security Objectives	21
4.1	Security Objectives for the TOE	21
4.2	Security Objectives for Operational Environment	23
4.3	Security Objective Rationale	24
5	Extended Components Definition	29
5.1	Definition of the Family FCS_RNG Generation of Random Numbers	29
5.2	Definition of the Family FIA_API	30
5.3	Definition of the Family FPT_EMS TOE Emanation	30
5.4	Definition of the Family FPT_ITE TSF image export	31
6	Security Requirements	33
6.1	Security Functional Requirements for the TOE	33
6.1.1	Overview	34
6.1.2	Users, subjects and objects	35
6.1.3	Security Functional Requirements for the TOE taken over from BSI-PP-0035	48
6.1.4	General Protection of User data and TSF data	49
6.1.5	Authentication	53
6.1.6	Access Control	60
6.1.7	Cryptographic Functions	81

6.1.8	Protection of communication	90
6.2	Security Assurance Requirements for the TOE	91
6.2.1	Refinements of the TOE Assurance Requirements	92
6.2.2	Refinements to ADV_ARC.1 Security architecture description	93
6.2.3	Refinements to ADV_FSP.4 Complete functional specification	94
6.2.4	Refinement to ADV_IMP.1	94
6.2.5	Refinements to AGD_OPE.1 Operational user guidance	94
6.2.6	Refinements to ATE_FUN.1 Functional tests	95
6.2.7	Refinements to ATE_IND.2 Independent testing – sample	95
6.3	Security Requirements Rationale	95
6.3.1	Security Functional Requirements Rationale	96
6.3.2	Rationale for SFR's Dependencies	102
6.3.3	Security Assurance Requirements Rationale	107
7	Package Crypto Box	109
7.1	TOE Overview	109
7.2	Security Problem Definition	109
7.2.1	Assets	109
7.2.2	Threats	109
7.2.3	Organisational Security Policies	109
7.2.4	Assumptions	109
7.3	Security Objectives	110
7.4	Security Requirements for Package Crypto Box	110
8	Package Contactless	117
8.1	TOE Overview	117
8.2	Security Problem Definition	117
8.2.1	Assets	117
8.2.2	Threats	118
8.2.3	Organisational Security Policies	118
8.2.4	Assumptions	118
8.3	Security Objectives	118
8.4	Security Requirements for Package Contactless	119
9	Package Logical Channel	134
9.1	TOE Overview	134
9.2	Security Problem Definition	134
9.2.1	Assets	134
9.2.2	Threats	134
9.2.3	Organisational Security Policies	134
9.2.4	Assumptions	134
9.3	Security Objectives	135

9.4	Security Requirements for Package Logical Channel	135
10	Annex: Composite Evaluation of Smart Cards as Signature Products based on COS Smart Card Platforms (Informative)	140
10.1	Smart Cards as Secure Signature-creation Devices based COS (Informative)	140
10.1.1	eHC as SSCD	141
10.1.2	eHPC as SSCD	142
10.2	Smart Cards as Part of Signature-creation Application based on COS Smart Card Platforms (Informative)	147
10.2.1	gSMC-KT as part of Electronic Health Card Terminal	147
10.2.2	gSMC-K as part of the SCA of the Konnektor	148
11	Acronyms	149
12	Bibliography	151

List of Tables

Table 1:	Mapping between options and packages.	11
Table 2:	Data objects to be protected by the TOE as primary assets.....	15
Table 3:	External entities	16
Table 4:	Overview of threats defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and taken over into this PP.....	16
Table 5:	Overview of OSP defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and taken over into this PP.....	18
Table 6:	Overview of assumptions defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and implemented by the TOE.	19
Table 7:	Overview of Security Objectives for the TOE defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and taken over into this PP.	21
Table 8:	Overview of Security Objectives for the Operational Environment defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and taken over into this PP.	24
Table 9:	Security Objective Rationale related to the IC platform.....	25
Table 10:	Security Objective Rationale for the COS part of the TOE.....	27
Table 11:	Security functional groups vs. SFRs related to the IC platform	34
Table 12:	Security functional groups vs. SFRs.....	34
Table 13:	TSF Data defined for the IC part	35
Table 14:	Authentication reference data of the human user and security attributes	36
Table 15:	Authentication reference data of the devices and security attributes.....	38
Table 16:	Authentication verification data of the TSF and security attributes	38
Table 17:	Security attributes of a subject.....	41
Table 18:	Subjects, objects, operations and security attributes. The references refer to [21].....	44
Table 19:	Mapping between commands described in COS specification [21] and the SFR	47
Table 20:	Mapping between SFR names in this PP and the SFR names in the BSI-PP-0035 [11]	49
Table 21:	Assurance components	92
Table 22:	Refined TOE assurance requirements	93

Table 23: Coverage of Security Objectives for the TOE IC part by SFR.....	96
Table 24: Mapping between security objectives for the TOE and SFR.....	98
Table 25: Dependencies of the SFR	107
Table 26: SAR Dependencies	108
Table 27: Authentication Data of the COS with package crypto box.....	110
Table 28: Mapping between security objectives for the TOE and SFR for package Cryptobox.....	115
Table 29: Dependencies of the SFRs	116
Table 30: Authentication Data of the COS with package contactless	119
Table 31: Mapping between security objectives for the TOE and SFR for package Contactless Interface.....	130
Table 32: Dependencies of the SFRs	133
Table 33: Mapping between security objectives for the TOE and SFR for the package Logical Channels.....	138
Table 34: Dependencies of the SFRs	139

1 PP Introduction

- 1 This section provides document management and overview information required to register the protection profile and to enable a potential user of the PP to determine, whether the PP is of interest.

1.1 PP reference

- 2

Title:	Protection Profile ‘Card Operating System Generation 2 (PP COS G2)’
Sponsor:	Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik (BSI)
Editor(s):	T-Systems GEI GmbH
CC Version:	3.1 (Revision 4)
Assurance Level:	Assurance level for this Protection Profile is EAL4 augmented with ALC_DVS.2, ATE_DPT.2 and AVA_VAN.5 (refer to section 6.3.3 for more detail)
General Status:	final
Version Number:	1.0 as of 23 rd August 2013
Registration:	BSI-CC-PP-0082
Keywords:	Gesundheitskarte, card operating system

1.2 TOE Overview

1.2.1 TOE definition and operational usage

- 3 The Target of Evaluation (TOE) addressed by the current protection profile is a smart card platform implementing the Card Operating System (COS) according [21] without any object system. The TOE shall comprise at least
 - i) the Security platform IC, i.e. the circuitry of the chip incl. the configuration data and initialisation data related to the security functionality of the chip and - if delivered - IC Dedicated Software¹ with the configuration data and initialisation data related to IC Dedicated Software (the integrated circuit, IC),
 - ii) the IC Embedded Software (Card Operating System, COS)²,
 - iii) the wrapper for interpretation of exported TSF data,
 - iv) the associated guidance documentation.
- 4 The TSF of the TOE defined in a ST claiming conformance to this PP shall comprise all security functionality available after delivery of the TOE including vendor specific commands for initialization, personalization and operational usage allowed but not described in the specification of the COS [21].

¹ usually preloaded (and often security certified) by the Chip Manufacturer

² usually – together with IC – completely implementing executable functions

- 5 The TOE does not include the object system, i. e. the application specific structures like the Master File (MF), the Folder (DF³), Elementary Files (EF) and internal security objects⁴ including TSF data. The TOE and the application specific object system build an initialized smart card product like an electronic Health Card (eHC [22]), a Professional Health Card (eHPC [23]) or a Secure Module Card Type B (SMC-B [24]), K (SMC-K [25]) and KT (SMC-KT [26]).

1.2.2 TOE major security features for operational use

- 6 This smart card platform provides the following main security functionality:
- authentication of human user and external devices,
 - storage of and access control on user data,
 - key management and cryptographic functions,
 - management of TSF data including life cycle support,
 - export of non-confidential TSF data of the object systems if implemented.

1.2.3 TOE type

- 7 The TOE type is a smart card without the application named as a whole ‘Card Operating System Card Platform’.
- 8 The export of non-confidential TSF data of the object systems supports verification of correct implementation of the object system of the smart card during manufacturing and test. The exported TSF data include all access control attributes of all objects but excludes any confidential authentication data. The wrapper provides communication interfaces between the COS and the verification tool. The verification tool sends commands for the COS through the wrapper. The COS may export the TSF data in a vendor specific format but the wrapper shall encode the data into standardized format for export to the verification tool. The verification tool compares the response of the smart card with the object system definition. Details of the interface will be described in the BSI Technical Guidance TR-03143 „eHealth G2-COS Konsistenz-Prüftool“.
- 9 The typical life cycle phases for the current TOE type are IC and Smartcard embedded software development, manufacturing⁵, smartcard product finishing⁶, smartcard personalisation and, finally, smartcard end-usage as defined in [10]. The TOE should be delivered with completely installed COS. Any patches of the COS may be delivered to Smart Card Integrator for completion of COS installation. Any smartcard embedded software loaded after these processes
- (i) changes the TOE if is part of the COS, or
 - (ii) is outside the TOE if is not part of the COS, and evidence shall be provided that this executable code cannot affect the security of the TOE.

Operational use of the TOE is explicitly in the focus of current PP. Some single properties of the manufacturing and the card issuing life cycle phases being significant for the security of the TOE in its operational phase are also considered by the current PP. A security evaluation / certification being conform with this PP will have to involve all life cycle phases into consideration to the

³ The abbreviation DF is commonly used for dedicated files, application and application dedicated files, which are folders with different methods of identification, cf. [21], sec. 8.1.1 and 8.3.1.

⁴ containing passwords, private keys etc.

⁵ IC manufacturing, packaging and testing

⁶ including installation of the object system

extent as required by the assurance package chosen here for the TOE (see chap. 2.3 ‘Package Claim’ below).

1.2.4 Non-TOE hardware/software/firmware

- 10 In order to be powered up and to communicate with the ‘external world’ the TOE needs a terminal (card reader) with contacts [28] or supporting the contactless communication according to [43].
- 11 The specification [21] defines the options “crypto box”, “contactless”, “logical channel”, and “USB” which the TOE may implement. The PP takes account of these options in the following sections:

Option / Package	Package	Remark
crypto box	crypto box	Defines additional cryptographic mechanisms (see chapter 7).
contactless	contactless	Defines additional mechanisms mostly used for contactless interfaces, i.e. PACE. The COS has to detect by itself whether the underlying chip uses a contact based or contactless interface and has to apply interface depended access rules (see chapter 8).
logical channel	logical channel	Defines additional mechanisms for the support of logical channels (see chapter 9).
USB	-	Defines additional communication support on the lower layers. This option does not contain any security related details and is therefore only listed for the sake of completeness.

Table 1: Mapping between options and packages.

- 12 The Common Criteria for IT Security Evaluation, Version 3.1, Revision 4, defines a package as a set of SFR or SAR. This approach does not necessarily fit for description of extended TSF due to extended functionality of the TOE by means of packages. Therefore it was decided to provide an extension of the Security Problem Definition, the Security Objectives, and the Security Requirements as well as for the corresponding rationales for each defined package.
- 13 If the TOE implements one of these options the ST writer must integrate the corresponding package definition with the update of the Security Problem Definition, Security Objectives, and the Security Requirements defined in that package into the ST. Additionally all rationales must be taken over into the ST.
- 14 *Application note 1:* The ST writer must describe in the chapter Conformance Claim, section Package claim which package was chosen and in section Conformance Rationale how these package are integrated in the ST.
- 15 *Application note 2:* The PP is written from the security point of view. In some cases this can result in different interpretations how security is enforced. For example from the implementation point of view the command ENABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT changes a security state within the memory of the TOE. From the security point of view the change of the security state

results in a change of the access rules. The PP describes rather the requirements for the security behaviour and does not focus on the implementation details claimed by [21]. The ST writer and the developer reading this PP should therefore keep in mind that the PP abstracts from the implementation.

2 Conformance Claims

2.1 CC Conformance Claim

- 16 This protection profile claims conformance to
Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 1: Introduction and General Model; CCMB-2012-09-001, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012 [1]
Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 2: Security Functional Components; CCMB-2012-09-002, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012 [2]
Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 3: Security assurance components; CCMB-2012-09-003, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012 [3]

as follows

- Part 2 extended,
- Part 3 conformant.

- 17 The
Common Methodology for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Evaluation Methodology; CCMB-2012-09-004, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012, [4]
has to be taken into account.

2.2 PP Claim

- 18 This PP claims **strict** conformance to protection profile BSI-PP-0035 [11].

2.3 Package Claim

- 19 The current PP is conformant to the following security requirements package: Assurance package EAL4 augmented with ALC_DVS.2, ATE_DPT.2 and AVA_VAN.5 as defined in the CC, part 3 [3].

2.4 Conformance Claim Rationale

- 20 This PP claims strict conformance to the BSI-PP-0035 [11].
- 21 From the Security Problem Definition (see section 3: “Security Problem Definition” [11]) of BSI-PP-0035 the threats (see section 3.2 “Threats” [11]) and the Organisational Security Policies (see section 3.3 “Organisational Security Policies” [11]) are taken over into this Protection Profile. Namely the following threats are taken over: T.Leak-Inherent, T.Phys-Probing, T.Malfunction, T.Phys-Manipulation, T.Leak-Forced, T.Abuse-Func, T.RND. The OSP P.Process-TOE is also taken over from BSI-PP-0035. See section 3.2 and 3.3 for more details.
- 22 The assumptions A.Process-Sec-IC, A.Plat-Appl and A.Resp-Appl defined in the BSI-PP-0035 [11] address the operational environment of the Security IC, i.e. the COS part of the current

TOE and the operational environment of the current TOE. The aspects of these assumptions are relevant for the COS part of the current TOE, address the development process of the COS and are evaluated according to composite evaluation approach [8]. Therefore these assumptions are now refined in order to address the assumptions about the operational environment of the current TOE (cf. chapter 3.4 for details).

- 23 The Security Objectives for the Security IC as defined in the BSI-PP-0035 O.Leak-Inherent, O.Phy-Probing, O.Malfunction, O.Phys-Manipulation, O.Leak-Forced, O.Abuse-Func, O.Identification, O.RND are included as security objectives for the current TOE. Security Objectives for the Environment OE.Resp-Appl defined in the BSI-PP-0035 is split into the security objective O_Resp_Appl for the COS part of the TOE and OE.Resp-ObjS for the object system in the operational environment of the TOE. The security objective for the environment OE.Plat-Appl defined in the BSI-PP-0035 is ensured by the COS part of the TOE and verified in the composite evaluation process. It results in a similar security objective for the object system in the operational environment of the TOE OE.Plat-COS. OE.Process-Sec-IC defined in the BSI-PP-0035 is completely ensured by the assurance class ALC of the TOE up to Phase 5 and addressed by OE.Process-Card. See chapter 4 for more details.
- 24 All Security Functional Requirements with existing refinements are taken over from the BSI-PP-0035 into this PP by iterations indicated by “/SICP”. Namely this are the following SFR: FRU_FLT.2/SICP, FPT_FLS.1/SICP, FMT_LIM.1/SICP, FMT_LIM.2/SICP, FAU_SAS.1/SICP, FPT_PHP.3/SICP, FDP_ITT.1/SICP, FPT_ITT.1/SICP, FDP_IFC.1/SICP, FCS_RNG.1/SICP. See section 6.1 for more details.
- 25 The assurance package claim is EAL4 augmented with ALC_DVS.2, ATE_DPT.2 and AVA_VAN.5. For rationale of the augmentations see section 6.3.3.
- 26 The refinements of the Security Assurance Requirements made in BSI-PP-0035 are taken over in this Protection Profile and must be applied to the Security platform IC.
- 27 As all important parts of the BSI-PP-0035 are referred in a way that these are part of this Protection Profile the rationales still hold. Please refer sections 4.3 and 6.3 for further details.
- 28 Therefore the strict conformance with the BSI-PP-0035 [11] is fulfilled by this Protection Profile.

2.5 Conformance statement

- 29 This PP requires *strict* conformance of any ST or PP claiming conformance to this PP.

3 Security Problem Definition

3.1 Assets and External Entities

- 30 As defined in section 1.2.1 the TOE is a smart card platform implementing the Card Operating System (COS) according [21] without any object system. In sense of the BSI-PP-0035 [11] the COS is User Data and Security IC Embedded Software.
- 31 In section 3.1 “Description of Assets” in the BSI-PP-0035 a high level description (in sense of this PP) of the assets (related to standard functionality) is given. Please refer there for a long description. Namely these assets are
- the User Data,
 - the Security IC Embedded Software, stored and in operation,
 - the security services provided by the TOE for the Security IC Embedded Software, and
 - the random numbers produced by the IC platform.
- 32 In this Protection Profile these assets and the protection requirements of these assets are refined because
- the User Data defined in the BSI-PP-0035 are User data or TSF Data in the context of the current PP,
 - Security IC Embedded Software is part of the current TOE,
 - the security services provided by the TOE for the Security IC Embedded Software are part of the current TSF and
 - the random numbers produced by the IC platform are internally used by the TSF.
- 33 The primary assets are User Data to be protected by the COS as long as they are in scope of the TOE and the security services provided by the TOE.

Asset	Definition
User data in EF	Data for the user stored in elementary files of the file hierarchy.
Secret keys	Symmetric cryptographic key generated as result of mutual authentication and used for encryption and decryption of user data.
Private keys	Confidential asymmetric cryptographic key of the user used for decryption and computation of digital signature.
Public keys	Integrity protected public asymmetric cryptographic key of the user used for encryption and verification of digital signatures and permanently stored on the TOE or provided to the TOE as parameter of the command.

Table 2: Data objects to be protected by the TOE as primary assets

- 34 Note: elementary files (EF) may be stored in the MF, any DF, or Application and Application Dedicated File. The place of an EF in the file hierarchy defines features of the User Data stored in the EF. User data does not affect the operation of the TSF (cf. CC part 1, para. 100). Cryptographic keys used by the TSF to verify authentication attempts of external entities (i.e. authentication reference data) including the verification of Card Verifiable Certificates (CVC) or

authenticate itself to external entities by generation of authentication verification data in a cryptographic protocol are TSF data (cf. Tables 13, 14 and 17)

- 35 This protection profile considers the following external entities:

External entity	Definition
World	Any user independent on identification or successful authentication ⁷ .
Human User	A person authenticated by password or PUC.
Device	An external device authenticated by cryptographic operation

Table 3: External entities⁸

3.2 Threats

- 36 This section describes the threats to be averted by the TOE independently or in collaboration with its IT environment. These threats result from the assets protected by the TOE and the method of TOE's use in the operational environment.

- 37 The following threats are defined in the BSI-PP-0035 [11]: T.Leak-Inherent, T.Phys-Probing, T.Malfunction, T.Phys-Manipulation, T.Leak-Forced, T.Abuse-Func, T.RND. All threats are part of this Protection Profile and taken over into this PP. Please refer BSI-PP-0035 for further descriptions and the details. Table 4 lists all threats taken over with the corresponding reference.

Threat name	Reference to paragraph in [11]	Short description
T.Leak-Inherent	78	Inherent Information Leakage
T.Phys-Probing	79	Physical Probing
T.Malfunction	80	Malfunction due to Environmental Stress
T.Phys-Manipulation	81	Physical Manipulation
T.Leak-Forced	82	Forced Information Leakage
T.Abuse-Func	83	Abuse of Functionality
T.RND	84	Deficiency of Random Numbers

Table 4: Overview of threats defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and taken over into this PP.

- 38 The TOE shall avert the threat "Forge of User or TSF data (T.Forge_Internal_Data)" as specified below.

⁷ The user World corresponds to the access condition ALWAYS in [21]. An authenticated Human User or Device is allowed to use the right assigned for World.

⁸ This table defines external entities and subjects in the sense of [1]. Subjects can be recognised by the TOE independent of their nature (human or technical user). As result of an appropriate identification and authentication process, the TOE creates – for each of the respective external entity – an 'image' inside and 'works' then with this TOE internal image (also called subject in [1]). From this point of view, the TOE itself perceives only 'subjects' and, for them, does not differ between 'subjects' and 'external entities'. There is no dedicated subject with the role 'attacker' within the current security policy, whereby an attacker might 'capture' any subject role recognised by the TOE.

T.Forge_Internal_Data

Forge of User or TSF data

An attacker with high attack potential tries to forge internal user data or TSF data.

This threat comprises several attack scenarios of smart card forgery. The attacker may try to alter the user data e.g. to add user data in elementary files. The attacker may misuse the TSF management function to change the user authentication data to a known value.

- 39 The TOE shall avert the threat “Compromise of confidential User or TSF data (T.Compromise_Internal_Data)” as specified below.

T.Compromise_Internal_Data

Compromise of confidential User or TSF data

An attacker with high attack potential tries to compromise confidential user data or TSF data through the communication interface of the TOE.

This threat comprises several attack scenarios e.g. guessing of the user authentication data (password) or reconstruction the private decipher key using the response code for chosen cipher texts (like Bleichenbacher attack for the SSL protocol implementation), e.g. to add keys for decipherment. The attacker may misuse the TSF management function to change the user authentication data to a known value.

- 40 The TOE shall avert the threat “Misuse of TOE functions (T.Misuse)” as specified below.

T.Misuse

Misuse of TOE functions

An attacker with high attack potential tries to use the TOE functions to gain access to the access control protected assets without knowledge of user authentication data or any implicit authorization.

This threat comprises several attack scenarios e.g. the attacker may try circumvent the user authentication to use signing functionality without authorization. The attacker may try to alter the TSF data e.g. to extend the user rights after successful authentication.

- 41 The TOE shall avert the threat “Malicious Application (T.Malicious_Application)” as specified below.

T.Malicious_Application

Malicious Application

An attacker with high attack potential tries to use the TOE functions to install an additional malicious application in order to compromise or alter User Data or TSF data.

- 42 The TOE shall avert the threat “Cryptographic attack against the implementation (T.Crypto)” as specified below.

T.Crypto

Cryptographic attack against the implementation

An attacker with high attack potential tries to launch a cryptographic attack against the implementation of the cryptographic algorithms or tries to guess keys using a brute-force attack on the function inputs.

This threat comprises several attack scenarios e.g. an attacker may try to foresee the output of a random number generator in order to get a session key. An attacker may try to use leakage during cryptographic operation in order to use SPA, DPA, DFA or EMA techniques in order to compromise the keys or to get knowledge of other sensitive TSF or User data. Furthermore an attacker could try guessing the key by using a brute-force attack.

- 43 The TOE shall avert the threat “Interception of Communication (T.Intercept)” as specified below.

T.Intercept

Interception of Communication

An attacker with high attack potential tries to intercept the communication between the TOE and an external entity, to forge, to delete or to add other data to the transmitted sensitive data.

This threat comprises several attack scenarios. An attacker may try to read or forge data during transmission in order to add data to a record or to gain access to authentication data.

- 44 The TOE shall avert the threat “Wrong Access Rights for User Data or TSF Data (T.WrongRights)” as specified below.

T.WrongRights

Wrong Access Rights for User Data or TSF Data

An attacker with high attack potential executes undocumented or inappropriate access rights defined in object system and compromises or manipulate sensitive User data or TSF data.

3.3 Organisational Security Policies

- 45 The TOE and/or its environment shall comply with the following Organisational Security Policies (OSP) as security rules, procedures, practices, or guidelines imposed by an organisation upon its operation.
- 46 The following OSP is defined in the BSI-PP-0035 [11]. That OSP is part of this Protection Profile and is taken over into this PP for the current TOE. Note the current PP includes the embedded software which is not a part of TOE defined in the BSI-PP-0035 [11]. Please refer BSI-PP-0035 for further descriptions and the details. Table 5 lists all OSP taken over with the corresponding reference.

OSP name	Short description	Reference to paragraph in [11]
P.Process-TOE	Protection during TOE Development and Production	86

Table 5: Overview of OSP defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and taken over into this PP.

3.4 Assumptions

- 47 The assumptions describe the security aspects of the environment in which the TOE will be used or is intended to be used.
- 48 The assumptions defined in the BSI-PP-0035 [11] address the operational environment of the Security IC, i.e. the COS part of the current TOE and the operational environment of the current TOE. The aspects of these assumptions, which are relevant for the COS part of the current TOE, address the development process of the current TOE and are evaluated according to composite evaluation approach [8]. Therefore these assumptions are now refined in order to address the assumptions about the operational environment of the current TOE. The Table 6 lists and maps these assumptions for the operational environment with the corresponding reference.

Assumptions defined in [11]	Reference to paragraph in [11]	Refined assumptions for the operational environment of the current TOE	Rationale of the changes
A.Process-Sec-IC	91	A.Process-Sec-SC	While the TOE of BSI-PP-0035 is delivered after Phase 3 IC manufacturing and Testing or Phase 4 IC Packaging the current TOE is delivered after Phase 5 Composite Product Integration before Phase 6 Personalisation. The protection during Phase 4 may and during Phase 5 shall be addressed by security of the development environment of the current TOE. Only protection during Personalisation is in responsibility of the operational environment.
A.Plat-Appl	93	removed	Usage of Hardware Platform as TOE of BSI-PP-0035 as addressed by A.Plat-Appl is covered by ADV class related to COS as part of the current TOE.
A.Resp-Appl	95	A.Resp-ObjS	The user data of the TOE of BSI-PP-0035 are the Security IC Embedded Software, i.e. the COS part of the TOE, the TSF data of the current TOE and the user data of the COS. The object system contains the TSF data and defines the security attributes of the user data of the current TOE.

Table 6: Overview of assumptions defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and implemented by the TOE.

- 49 The developer of applications for COS must ensure the appropriate “A.Process-Sec-SC (Protection during Personalisation)” after delivery of the TOE.

A.Process-Sec-SC

Protection during Personalisation

It is assumed that security procedures are used after delivery of the TOE by the TOE Manufacturer up to delivery to the end-consumer to maintain confidentiality and integrity of the TOE and of its manufacturing and test data (to prevent any possible copy, modification, retention, theft or unauthorised use).

- 50 The developer of applications for COS must ensure the appropriate “Usage of COS (A.Plat-COS)” while developing the application.

A.Plat-COS

Usage of COS

An object system designed for the TOE meets the following documents: (i) TOE guidance documents (refer to the Common Criteria assurance class AGD) such as the user guidance, and the application notes, and (ii) findings of the TOE evaluation reports relevant for the COS as documented in the certification report.

- 51 The developer of applications for COS must ensure the appropriate “Treatment of User Data by the Object System (A.Resp-ObjS)” while developing the application.

A.Resp-ObjS

Treatment of User Data by the Object System

All User Data and TSF Data of the TOE are treated in the object system as defined for its specific application context.

4 Security Objectives

52 This chapter describes the security objectives for the TOE and the security objectives for the TOE environment.

4.1 Security Objectives for the TOE

53 The following TOE security objectives address the protection provided by the TOE.

54 The following Security Objectives for the TOE are defined in the BSI-PP-0035 [11]. The Security Objectives for the TOE are part of this Protection Profile and are taken over into this PP. Please refer BSI-PP-0035 for further descriptions and the details. Table 6 lists all Security Objectives taken over with the corresponding reference.

Security Objectives name	Short description	Reference to paragraph in [11]
O.Leak-Inherent	Protection against Inherent Information Leakage	100
O.Phy-Probing	Protection against Physical Probing	101
O.Malfunction	Protection against Malfunctions	102
O.Phys-Manipulation	Protection against Physical Manipulation	103
O.Leak-Forced	Protection against Forced Information Leakage	104
O.Abuse-Func	Protection against Abuse of Functionality	105
O.Identification	TOE Identification	106
O.RND	Random Numbers	107

Table 7: Overview of Security Objectives for the TOE defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and taken over into this PP.

55 Additionally the following Security Objectives for the TOE are defined:

56 The TOE shall provide “Integrity of internal data (O.Integrity)” as specified below.

O.Integrity

Integrity of internal data

The TOE must ensure the integrity of the User Data, the security services and the TSF data under the TSF scope of control.

57 The TOE shall provide “Confidentiality of internal data (O.Confidentiality)” as specified below.

O.Confidentiality

Confidentiality of internal data

The TOE must ensure the confidentiality of private keys and other confidential User Data and confidential TSF data especially the authentication data, under the TSF scope of control against attacks with high attack potential.

58 The TOE shall provide a “Treatment of User and TSF Data (O.Resp-COS)” as specified below.

O.Resp-COS

Treatment of User and TSF Data

The User Data and TSF data (especially cryptographic keys) are treated by the COS as defined by the TSF data of the object system.

59 The TOE shall provide “Support of TSF data export (O.TSFDataExport)” as specified below.

O.TSFDataExport

Support of TSF data export

The TOE must provide correct export of TSF data of the object system excluding confidential TSF data for external review.

60 The TOE shall provide “Authentication of external entities (O.Authentication)” as specified below.

O.Authentication

Authentication of external entities

The TOE supports the authentication of human users and external devices. The TOE is able to authenticate itself to external entities.

61 The TOE shall provide “Access Control for Objects (O.AccessControl)” as specified below.

O.AccessControl

Access Control for Objects

The TOE must enforce that only authenticated entities with sufficient access control rights can access restricted objects and services. The access control policy of the TOE must bind the access control right of an object to authenticated entities. The TOE must provide management functionality for access control rights of objects.

62 The TOE shall provide “Generation and import of keys (O.KeyManagement)” as specified below.

O.KeyManagement

Generation and import of keys

The TOE must enforce the secure generation, import, distribution, access control and destruction of cryptographic keys. The TOE must support the public key import from and export to a public key infrastructure.

63 The TOE shall provide “Cryptographic functions (O.Crypto)” as specified below.

O.Crypto

Cryptographic functions

The TOE must provide cryptographic services by implementation of secure cryptographic algorithms for hashing, key generation, data confidentiality by symmetric and asymmetric encryption and decryption, data integrity protection by symmetric MAC and asymmetric signature algorithms, and cryptographic protocols for symmetric and asymmetric entity authentication.

64 The TOE shall provide a “Secure messaging (O.SecureMessaging)” as specified below.

O.SecureMessaging

Secure messaging

The TOE supports secure messaging for protection of the confidentiality and the integrity of the commands received from successful authenticated device and sending responses to this device on demand of the external application. The TOE enforces the use of secure messaging for receiving commands if defined by access condition of an object.

4.2 Security Objectives for Operational Environment

- 65 This section describes the security objectives for the operational environment enforced by the Security IC Embedded Software.
- 66 The following security objectives for the operational environment of the security IC are defined in the BSI-PP-0035 [11]. The operational environment of the Security IC as TOE in the BSI-PP-0035 comprises the COS part of the current TOE and the operational environment of the current TOE. Therefore these security objectives of the operational environment are split and refined. The aspects relevant for the COS part of the current TOE shall be fulfilled in the development process of the COS and evaluated according to composite evaluation approach [8]. The remaining aspects of the security objectives for the operational environment defined in the BSI-PP-0035 are addressed in new security objectives for the operational environment of the current PP. The table 8 lists and maps these security objectives for the operational environment with the corresponding reference.

Security Objectives for the operational environment defined in [11]	Reference to paragraph in [11]	Refined security objectives for the operational environment of the current TOE	Rationale of the changes
OE.Plat-Appl	109	removed	OE.Plat-Appl requires the Security IC Embedded Software to meet the guidance documents of the Security IC. The Security IC Embedded Software is part of the current TOE. This requirement shall be fulfilled in the development process of the TOE.
OE.Resp-Appl	110	OE.Resp-ObjS	OE.Resp-Appl requires the Security IC Embedded Software to treat the user data as required by the security needs of the specific application context. This objective shall be ensured by the TOE and the object system.

Security Objectives for the operational environment defined in [11]	Reference to paragraph in [11]	Refined security objectives for the operational environment of the current TOE	Rationale of the changes
OE.Process-Sec-IC	111	OE.Process-Card	The policy defined for the Security platform IC is extended to the current TOE.

Table 8: Overview of Security Objectives for the Operational Environment defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] and taken over into this PP.

- 67 The Security IC Embedded Software shall provide “Usage of COS (OE.Plat-COS)” as specified below

OE.Plat-COS

Usage of COS

To ensure that the TOE is used in a secure manner the object system shall be designed such that the requirements from the following documents are met: (i) user guidance of the COS, (ii) application notes for the COS (iii) other guidance documents, and (iv) findings of the TOE evaluation reports relevant for applications developed for COS as referenced in the certification report.

- 68 The Security IC Embedded Software shall provide “Treatment of User Data (OE.Resp-ObjS)” as specified below

OE.Resp-ObjS

Treatment of User Data

All User Data and TSF Data of the object system are defined as required by the security needs of the specific application context.

- 69 The operational environment of the TOE shall provide “Protection of Smartcard during Personalisation (OE.Process-Card)” as specified below

OE.Process-Card

Protection of Smartcard during Personalisation

Security procedures shall be used after delivery of the TOE during Phase 6 Smartcard personalisation up to the delivery of the smartcard to the end-user in order to maintain confidentiality and integrity of the TOE and to prevent any theft, unauthorised personalization or unauthorised use.

4.3 Security Objective Rationale

- 70 Table 1 in BSI-PP-0035 [11] Section 4.4 “Security Objectives Rationale” gives an overview, how the assumptions, threats, and organisational security policies taken over are addressed by the objectives. Please refer that table and the text following after that table justifying this in detail for the further details.

- 71 The following tables provide an overview for the coverage of the defined security problem by the security objectives for the TOE and its environment. The tables are addressing the security

problem definition as given in the BSI-PP-0035 and the additional threats, organisational policies and assumptions defined in the current PP. It shows that all threats and OSPs are addressed by the security objectives for the TOE and for the TOE environment. It also shows that all assumptions are addressed by the security objectives for the TOE environment.

	(SAR ALC for IC part of the TOE)	OE.Process-Sec-Card	(SAR ADV class for COS part of the TOE)	(SAR for COS part of the TOE)	OE.Resp-ObjS	O.Identification	O.Leak-Inherent	O.Phys-Probing	O.Malfunction	O.Phys-Manipulation	O.Leak-Forced	O.Abuse-Func	O.RND
A.Process-Sec-IC	(X)	(X)											
A.Process-Sec-SC		X											
A.Plat-Appl			(X)										
A.Resp-Appl				(X)									
A.Resp-ObjS					X								
P.Process-TOE						X							
T.Leak-Inherent							X						
T.Phys-Probing								X					
T.Malfunction									X				
T.Phys-Manipulation										X			
T.Leak-Forced											X		
T.Abuse-Func												X	
T.RND													X

Table 9: Security Objective Rationale related to the IC platform

- 72 The **A.Process-Sec-IC** assumes and **OE. Process-Sec-IC** requires that security procedures are used after delivery of the IC by the IC Manufacturer up to delivery to the end-consumer to maintain confidentiality and integrity of the TOE and of its manufacturing and test data (to prevent any possible copy, modification, retention, theft or unauthorised use). Development and production of the Security IC is part of development and production of the TOE because it includes the Security IC. The **A.Process-Sec-SC** assumes and **OE.Process-Sec-Card** requires security procedures during Phase 6 Smartcard personalisation up to the delivery of the smartcard to the end-user. More precisely, the smartcard life cycle according to [10] (cf. also to BSI-PP-0035) are covered as follows.

- IC development (Phase 2) and IC manufacturing and testing (Phase3) are covered as development and manufacturing of the security IC and therefore of the TOE as well.
 - IC packaging and testing (Phase 3) may be part of the development and manufacturing environment or the operational environment of the security IC. Even if it is part of the operational environment of the Security IC addressed by OE. Process-Sec-IC it will be part of the development and manufacturing environment of the current TOE and covered by the SAR ALC_DVS.2.
 - IC packaging and testing (Phase 4) and Smartcard Packaging and finishing process (Phase 5) are addressed by OE. Process-Sec-IC but they are part of the development and manufacturing environment of the current TOE and covered by the SAR ALC_DVS.2.
 - Smartcard personalisation (Phase 6) up to the delivery of the smartcard to the end-user is addressed by A.Process-Sec-IC and A.Process-Sec-SC and covered by OE.Process-Sec-Card.
- 73 The assumption **A.Plat-Appl** assumes that the Security IC Embedded Software is designed so that the requirements from the following documents are met: (i) TOE guidance documents (refer to the Common Criteria assurance class AGD) such as the hardware data sheet, and the hardware application notes, and (ii) findings of the TOE evaluation reports relevant for the Security IC Embedded Software as documented in the certification report. This is met by the SAR of ADV class and the requirements for composite evaluation [8].
- 74 The assumption **A.Resp-Appl** assumes that security relevant user data (especially cryptographic keys) are treated by the Security IC Embedded Software as defined for its specific application context. This assumption is split into requirements for the COS part of the TSF to provide appropriate security functionality for the specific application context as defined by SFR of the current PP and the assumption **A.Resp-ObjS** that assumes all User Data and TSF Data of the TOE are treated in the object system as defined for its specific application context. The security objective for the operational environment **OE.Resp-Obj** requires the object system to be defined as required by the security needs of the specific application context.
- 75 The **OSP P.Process-TOE** and the threats **T.Leak-Inherent**, **T.Phys-Probing**, **T.Malfunction**, **T.Phys-Manipulation**, **T.Leak-Forced**, **T.Abuse-Func** and **T.RND** are covered by the security objectives as described in BSI-PP-0035. As stated in section 2.4, this PP claims conformance to BSI-PP-0035 [11]. The objectives, assumptions, policies and threats as used in Table 9 are defined and handled in [11]. Hence, the rationale for these items and their correlation with Table 9 is given in [11] and not repeated here.
- 76 The current PP defines new threats and assumptions for the TOE extended to the the Security platform IC as TOE defined in BSI-PP-0035 and extends the policy **P.Process-TOE** to the current TOE.

	O.Integrity	O.Confidentiality	O.Resp-COS	O.TSFDataExport	O.Authentication	O.AccessControl	O.KeyManagement	O.Crypto	O.SecureMessaging	OE.Plat-COS	OE.Resp-ObjS	OE.Process-Card
T.Forge_Internal_Data	X		X									
T.Compromise_Internal_Data		X	X				X					
T.Malicious_Application				X	X	X						
T.Misuse					X	X						
T.Crypto								X				
T.Intercept									X			
T.WrongRights			X									
A.Plat-COS										X		
A.Resp-ObjS											X	
P.Process-TOE												X

Table 10: Security Objective Rationale for the COS part of the TOE

- 77 A detailed justification required for *suitability* of the security objectives to coup with the security problem definition is given below.
- 78 The thread **T.Forge_Internal_Data** addresses the falsification of internal user data or TSF data by an attacker. This is prevented by O.Integrity that ensures the integrity of user data, the security services and the TSF data. Also, O.Resp-COS addresses this thread because the user data and TSF data are treated by the TOE as defined by the TSF data of the object system.
- 79 The thread **T.Compromise_Internal_Data** addresses the disclosure of confidential user data or TSF data by an attacker. The objective O.Resp-COS requires that the user data and TSF data are treated by the TOE as defined by the TSF data of the object system. Hence, the confidential data are handled correctly by the TSF. The security objective O.Confidentiality ensures the confidentiality of private keys and other confidential TSF data. O.KeyManagement requires that the used keys to protect the confidentiality are generated, imported, distributed, managed and destroyed in a secure way.
- 80 The thread **T.Malicious_Application** addresses the modification of user data or TSF data by the installation and execution of a malicious code by an attacker. The security objective O.TSFDataExport requires the correct export of TSF data in order to prevent the export of code fragments that could be used for analysing and modification of TOE code. O.Authentication enforces user authentication in order to control the access protected functions that could be (mis)used to install and execute malicious code. Also, O.AccessControl requires the TSF to enforce an access control policy for the access to restricted objects in order to prevent unauthorised installation of malicious code.

- 81 The thread **T.Misuse** addresses the usage of access control protected assets by an attacker without knowledge of user authentication data or by any implicit authorization. This is prevented by the security objective O.AccessControl that requires the TSF to enforce an access control policy for the access to restricted objects. Also the security objective O.Authentication requires user authentication for the use of protected functions.
- 82 The thread **T.Crypto** addresses a cryptographic attack to the implementation of cryptographic algorithms or the guessing of keys using brute force attacks. This thread is directly covered by the security objective O.Crypto which requires a secure implementation of cryptographic algorithms.
- 83 The thread **T.Intercept** addresses the interception of the communication between the TOE and an external entity by an attacker. The attacker tries to delete, add or forge transmitted data. This thread is directly addressed by the security objective O.SecureMessaging which requires the TOE to establish a trusted channel that protects the confidentiality and integrity of the transmitted data between the TOE and an external entity.
- 84 The thread **T.WrongRights** addresses the compromising or manipulation of sensitive user data or TSF data by using undocumented or inappropriate access rights defined in the object system. This thread is addressed by the security objective O.Resp-COS which requires the TOE to treat the user data and TSF data as defined by the TSF data of the object system. Hence the correct access rights are always used and prevent misuse by undocumented or inappropriate access rights to that data.
- 85 The assumption **A.Plat-COS** assumes that the object system of the TOE is designed according to dedicated guidance documents and according to relevant findings of the TOE evaluation reports. This assumption is directly addressed by the security objective for the operational environment OE.Plat-COS.
- 86 The assumption **A.Resp-ObjS** assumes that all user data and TSF data are treated by the object system as defined for its specific application context. This assumption is directly addressed by the security objective for the operational environment OE.Resp-ObjS.
- 87 The OSP **P.Process-TOE** addresses the protection during TOE development and production as defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11]. This is supported by the security objective for the operational environment OE.Process-Card that addresses the TOE after the delivery for phase 5 up to 7: It requires that end consumers maintain the confidentiality and integrity of the TOE and its manufacturing and test data.

5 Extended Components Definition

88 This protection profile uses components defined as extensions to Common Criteria part 2 [3]. The following extensions are taken from BSI-PP-0035 [11] chapter 5 “Extended Components Definition” and are part of this Protection Profile:

- Definition of the Family FMT_LIM, and
- Definition of the Family FAU_SAS.

The Definition of the Family FCS_RNG already defined in BSI-PP-0035 is updated according to [6] and [7] by refinement of selection “hybrid” to “hybrid physical” and “hybrid deterministic”. The families FIA_API, FPT_EMS and FPT_ITE are defined in the document on hand.

5.1 Definition of the Family FCS_RNG Generation of Random Numbers

89 This section describes the functional requirements for the generation of random numbers, which may be used as secrets for cryptographic purposes or authentication. The IT security functional requirements for a TOE are defined in an additional family (FCS_RNG) of the Class FCS (Cryptographic support).

Family Behaviour

90 This family defines quality requirements for the generation of random numbers that are intended to be used for cryptographic purposes.

Component levelling:



91 FCS_RNG.1 Generation of random numbers requires that the random number generator implements defined security capabilities and that the random numbers meet a defined quality metric.

Management: There are no management activities foreseen.

Audit: There are no actions defined to be auditable

FCS_RNG.1 Random number generation
Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: No dependencies.

FCS_RNG.1.1 The TSF shall provide a [selection: *physical, non-physical true, deterministic, hybrid physical, hybrid deterministic*] random number generator that implements: [assignment: *list of security capabilities*].

FCS_RNG.1.2 The TSF shall provide random numbers that meet [assignment: *a defined quality metric*].

92 *Application note 3:* This definition of FCS_RNG family is identical to the definition given in BSI-CC-PP-0035 but introduce additional RNG classes “hybrid physical” RNG and “hybrid deterministic” RNG according to [7].

5.2 Definition of the Family FIA_API

93 To describe the IT security functional requirements of the TOE a sensitive family (FIA_API) of the Class FIA (Identification and authentication) is defined here. This family describes the functional requirements for the proof of the claimed identity for the authentication verification by an external entity where the other families of the class FIA address the verification of the identity of an external entity.

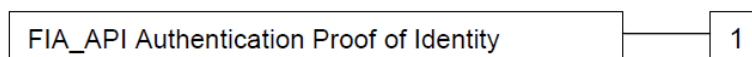
94 *Application note 4:* The other families of the Class FIA describe only the authentication verification of users' identity performed by the TOE and do not describe the functionality of the user to prove their identity. The following paragraph defines the extended family FIA_API from point of view of a TOE proving its identity.

95 FIA_API Authentication Proof of Identity

Family Behaviour

This family defines functions provided by the TOE to prove its identity and to be verified by an external entity in the TOE IT environment.

Component levelling:



FIA_API.1 Authentication Proof of Identity, provides prove of the identity of the TOE to an external entity.

Management: The following actions could be considered for the management functions in FMT: Management of authentication information used to prove the claimed identity.

Audit: There are no actions defined to be auditable

FIA_API.1 Authentication Proof of Identity

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

FIA_API.1.1 The TSF shall provide a [assignment: *authentication mechanism*] to prove the identity of the [assignment: *authorized user or role*].

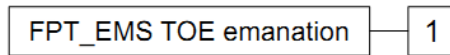
5.3 Definition of the Family FPT_EMS TOE Emanation

96 The family FPT_EMS (TOE Emanation) of the class FPT (Protection of the TSF) is defined here to describe the IT security functional requirements of the TOE. The TOE shall prevent attacks against secret data stored in and used by the TOE where the attack is based on external observable physical phenomena of the TOE. Examples of such attacks are evaluation of TOE's electromagnetic radiation, simple power analysis (SPA), differential power analysis (DPA), timing attacks, etc. This family describes the functional requirements for the limitation of intelligible emanations being not directly addressed by any other component of CC part 2 [2].

Family Behaviour

- 97 This family defines requirements to mitigate intelligible emanations.

Component levelling:



- 98 FPT_EMS.1 Emanation of TSF and User data, defines limits of TOE emanation related to TSF and User data.

Management:	There are no management activities foreseen.
Audit:	There are no actions defined to be auditable
FPT_EMS.1.1	Limit of Emissions requires to not emit intelligible emissions enabling access to TSF data or user data
FPT_EMS.1.2	Interface Emanation requires to not emit interface emanation enabling access to TSF data or user data
FPT_EMS.1	Emanation of TSF and User data
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FPT_EMS.1.1	The TOE shall not emit [assignment: <i>types of emissions</i>] in excess of [assignment: <i>specified limits</i>] enabling access to [assignment: <i>list of types of TSF data</i>] and [assignment: <i>list of types of user data</i>].
FPT_EMS.1.2	The TSF shall ensure [assignment: <i>type of users</i>] are unable to use the following interface [assignment: <i>type of connection</i>] to gain access to [assignment: <i>list of types of TSF data</i>] and [assignment: <i>list of types of user data</i>].

5.4 Definition of the Family FPT_ITE TSF image export

Family Behaviour

- 99 The family FPT_ITE (TSF image export) of the class FPT (Protection of the TSF) is defined here to describe the IT security functional requirements of the TOE. This family defines rules for fingerprints of TOE implementation and export of TSF data in order to allow verification of their correct implementation in the TOE. The export of a fingerprint of the TOE implementation, e.g. a keyed hash value over all implemented executable code, provides the ability to compare the implemented executable code with the known intended executable code. The export of all non-confidential TSF data, e.g. data security attributes of subjects and objects and public authentication verification data like public keys, provides the ability to verify their correctness e.g. against a specification. The exported TSF images must be correct, but do not need protection of confidentiality or integrity if the export is performed in a protected environment. This family describes the functional requirements for unprotected export of TSF data and export of TOE implementation images not being addressed by any other component of CC part 2 [2].

Component levelling:



- 100 FPT_ITE.1 Export of TOE implementation fingerprint, provides the ability to export the TOE implementation fingerprint without protection of confidentiality or integrity.
- 101 FPT_ITE.2 Export of TSF data, provides the ability to export the TSF data without protection of confidentiality or integrity.

Management There are no management activities foreseen.

FPT_ITE.1, FPT_ITE.2:

Audit FPT_ITE.1, There are no actions defined to be auditable
FPT_ITE.2:

FPT_ITE.1

Export of TOE implementation fingerprint

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

FPT_ITE.1.1 The TOE shall export fingerprint of TOE implementation given the following conditions [assignment: *conditions for export*].

FPT_ITE.1.2 The TSF shall use [assignment: *list of generation rules to be applied by TSF*] for the exported data.

FPT_ITE.2

Export of TSF data

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

FPT_ITE.2.1 The TOE shall export [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*] given the following conditions [assignment: *conditions for export*].

FPT_ITE.2.2 The TSF shall use [assignment: *list of encoding rules to be applied by TSF*] for the exported data.

6 Security Requirements

- 102 This part of the PP defines the detailed security requirements that shall be satisfied by the TOE. The statement of TOE security requirements shall define the *functional* and *assurance* security requirements that the TOE needs to satisfy in order to meet the security objectives for the TOE.
- 103 The CC allows several operations to be performed on security requirements (on the component level); *refinement*, *selection*, *assignment* and *iteration* are defined in sec. 8.1 of Part 1 [1] of the CC. Each of these operations is used in this PP.
- 104 The **refinement** operation is used to add detail to a requirement, and, thus, further restricts a requirement. Refinements of security requirements are denoted in such a way that added words are in **bold text** and removed words are ~~crossed-out~~. In some cases a interpretation refinement is given. In such a case a extra paragraph starting with “Refinement” is given.
- 105 The **selection** operation is used to select one or more options provided by the CC in stating a requirement. Selections having been made by the PP author are denoted as underlined text. Selections to be filled in by the ST author appear in square brackets with an indication that a selection is to be made [selection:] and are *italicised*.⁹
- 106 The **assignment** operation is used to assign a specific value to an unspecified parameter, such as the length of a password. Assignments having been made by the PP author are denoted by showing as underlined text. Assignments to be filled in by the ST author appear in square brackets with an indication that an assignment is to be made [assignment:] and are *italicised*. In some cases the assignment made by the PP authors defines a selection to be performed by the ST author. Thus this text is underlined and italicised like *this*.
- 107 The **iteration** operation is used when a component is repeated with varying operations. Iteration is denoted by showing a slash “/”, and the iteration indicator after the component identifier. For the sake of a better readability, the iteration operation may also be applied to some single components (being not repeated) in order to indicate belonging of such SFRs to same functional cluster. In such a case, the iteration operation is applied to only one single component.
- 108 Some SFRs (including the potential exiting refinement) were taken over from the BSI-PP-0035. A list of all SFRs taken from BSI-PP-0035 [11] can be found in section 2.4, additionally the SFRs taken over are labelled with a footnote.

6.1 Security Functional Requirements for the TOE

- 109 In order to define the Security Functional Requirements Part 2 of the Common Criteria [2] was used. However, some Security Functional Requirements have been refined. The refinements are described below the associated SFR.

⁹ Note the parameter defined in the COS specification are printed in italic as well but without indication of selection or assignment.

6.1.1 Overview

110 In order to give an overview of the security functional requirements in the context of the security services offered by the TOE, the author of the PP defined the security functional groups and allocated the functional requirements described in the following sections to them:

Security Functional Groups	Security Functional Requirements concerned
Protection against Malfunction	FRU_FLT.2/SICP, FPT_FLS.1/SICP
Protection against Abuse of Functionality	FMT_LIM.1/SICP, FMT_LIM.2/SICP, FAU_SAS.1/SICP
Protection against Physical Manipulation and Probing	FPT_PHP.3/SICP
Protection against Leakage	FDP_ITT.1/SICP, FPT_ITT.1/SICP, FDP_IFC.1/SICP
Generation of Random Numbers	FCS_RNG.1/SICP

Table 11: Security functional groups vs. SFRs related to the IC platform

Security Functional Groups	Security Functional Requirements concerned
General Protection of User data and TSF data (section 6.1.4)	FDP_RIP.1, FPT_FLS.1, FPT_EMS.1, FPT_TDC.1, FPT_ITE.1, FPT_ITE.2, FPT_TST.1
Authentication (section 6.1.5)	FIA_AFL.1/PIN, FIA_AFL.1/PUC, FIA_ATD.1, FIA_UAU.1, FIA_UAU.4, FIA_UAU.5, FIA_UAU.6, FIA_API.1, FMT_SMR.1, FIA_USB.1
Access Control (section 159)	FDP_ACC.1/EF, FDP_ACF.1/EF, FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACF.1/ MF_DF, FMT_MSA.3, FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/Life, FMT_MSA.1/SEF, FMT_MTD.1/PIN, FMT_MSA.1/PIN, FMT_MTD.1/Auth, FMT_MSA.1/Auth, FMT_MTD.1/NE
Cryptographic Functions (section 6.1.7)	FCS_RNG.1, FCS_COP.1/SHA, FCS_COP.1/ COS.3TDES, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RMAC, FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM, FCS_COP.1/ COS.AES, FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_CKM.1/RSA, FCS_CKM.1/ELC, FCS_CKM.1/ DH.PACE, FCS_COP.1/ COS.CMAC, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.V, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC, FCS_CKM.4
Protection of communication (section 6.1.8)	FPT_ITC.1/TC

Table 12: Security functional groups vs. SFRs

111 The following TSF Data are defined for the IC part of the TOE.

TSF Data	Definition
TOE pre-personalisation data	Any data supplied by the Card Manufacturer that is injected into the non-volatile memory by the Integrated Circuits manufacturer.
TOE initialisation data	Initialisation Data defined by the TOE Manufacturer to identify the

TSF Data	Definition
	TOE and to keep track of the Security IC's production and further life-cycle phases are considered as belonging to the TSF data.

Table 13: TSF Data defined for the IC part

6.1.2 Users, subjects and objects

112 The security attributes of human users are stored in password objects (cf. [21] for details). The human user selects the password object by *pwIdentifier* and therefore the role gained by the subject acting for this human user after successful authentication. The role is a set of access rights defined by the access control rules of the objects containing this *pwIdentifier*. The *secret* is used to verify the authentication attempt of the human user providing the authentication verification data. The security attributes *transportStatus*, *lifeCycleStatus* and *flagEnabled* stored in the password object define the status of the role associated with the password. E.g. if the *transportStatus* is equal to *Leer-PIN* or *Transport-PIN* the user is enforced to define his or her own password and making this password and this role effective (by changing the *transportStatus* to *regularPassword*). The multi-reference password shares the *secret* with the password identified by *pwReference*. It allows enforcing re-authentication for access and limitation of authentication status to specific objects and makes password management easier by using the same secret for different roles. The security attributes *interfaceDependentAccessRules*, *startRetryCounter*, *retryCounter*, *minimumLength* and *maximumLength* are defined for the *secret*. The PUC defined for the *secret* is intended for password management and the authorization gained by successful authentication is limited to the command RESET RETRY COUNTER for reset of the *retryCounter* and setting a new *secret*.

113 The following table provides an overview of the authentication reference data and security attributes of human users and the security attributes of the authentication reference data as TSF data.

User type	Authentication reference data and security attributes	Operations
Human user	<p>Password</p> <p><u>Authentication reference data</u></p> <p><i>secret</i></p> <p><u>Security attributes of the user role</u></p> <p><i>pwIdentifier</i></p> <p><i>transportStatus</i></p> <p><i>lifeCycleStatus</i></p> <p><i>flagEnabled</i></p> <p><i>startSsecList</i></p> <p><u>Security attributes of the secret</u></p> <p><i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i></p> <p><i>startRetryCounter</i></p> <p><i>retryCounter</i></p> <p><i>minimumLength</i></p> <p><i>maximumLength</i></p>	<p>VERIFY, CHANGE REFERENCE DATA, ENABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT, DISABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT, ACTIVATE, DEACTIVATE, DELETE, TERMINATE</p>
Human user	Multi-Reference password	VERIFY, CHANGE REFERENCE DATA,

User type	Authentication reference data and security attributes	Operations
	<u>Authentication reference data</u> <i>Secret</i> is shared with the password identified by <i>pwReference</i> . <u>Security attributes of the user role</u> <i>pwIdentifier</i> , <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> , <i>transportStatus</i> <i>flagEnabled</i> <i>startSsecList</i> . <u>Security attributes of the secret</u> The security attributes <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> , <i>minimumLength</i> , <i>maximumLength</i> , <i>startRetryCounter</i> and <i>retryCounter</i> are shared with password identified by <i>pwReference</i> .	ENABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT, DISABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT, ACTIVATE, DEACTIVATE, DELETE, TERMINATE
Human user	Personal unblock code (PUC) <u>Authentication reference data</u> <i>PUK</i> <u>Security attributes</u> <i>pwIdentifier</i> of the password ¹⁰ , <i>pukUsage</i>	RESET RETRY COUNTER

Table 14: Authentication reference data of the human user and security attributes

114 The security attributes of devices depend on the authentication mechanism and the authentication reference data. A device may be associated with a symmetric cryptographic authentication key with a specific *keyIdentifier* and therefore the role gained by the subject acting for this device after successful authentication. The role is defined by the access control rules of the objects containing this *keyIdentifier*. A device may be also associated with a certificate containing the public key as authentication reference data and the card holder authorization (*CHA*). The authentication protocol comprise the verification of the certificate by means of the root public key and command PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE and by means of the public key contained in the successful verified certificate and the command EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE. The subject acting for this device get the role of the *CHA* which is referenced in the access control rules of the objects.

User type	Authentication reference data and security attributes	Operations
Device	Symmetric authentication key <u>Authentication reference data</u> <i>macKey</i> ¹¹	EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE, MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE, GENERAL AUTHENTICATE, ACTIVATE,

¹⁰ The PUC is part of the password object as authentication reference data for the RESET RETRY COUNTER command for this password.

User type	Authentication reference data and security attributes	Operations
	<u>Security attributes of the Authentication reference data</u> <i>keyIdentifier</i> <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> <i>numberScenario</i>	DEACTIVATE, DELETE, TERMINATE
Device	Asymmetric authentication key <u>Authentication reference data</u> <i>Root Public Key</i> <i>Certificate</i> containing the <i>public key</i> of the device ¹² <i>publicKeyList</i> , <i>persistentPublicKeyList</i> ¹³ <u>Security attributes of the user</u> <i>Certificate Holder Reference (CHR)</i> <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> , <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> , <i>Certificate Holder Authorization (CHA)</i> for RSA keys or <i>Certificate Holder Authorization Template (CHAT)</i> for elliptic curve keys <u>Security attributes in the certificate</u> <i>Certificate Profile Identifier (CPI)</i> <i>Certification Authority Reference (CAR)</i> <i>Object Identifier (OID)</i>	PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE, EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE with <i>algID</i> equal to <i>rsaRoleCheck</i> or <i>elcRoleCheck</i>
Device	Secure messaging channel key <u>Authentication reference data</u> MAC session key SK4SM <u>Security attributes of SK4SM</u> <i>flagSessionEnabled</i> equal SK4SM, <i>Kmac</i> and <i>SSCmac</i> , <i>negotiationKeyInformation</i> .	Commands using secure messaging
Device	Trusted channel	PSO DECIPHER and PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM used for

¹¹ The symmetric authentication object contains encryption key *encKey* and a message authentication key *macKey*.

¹² The certificate of the device may be only end of a certificate chain going up to the root public key.

¹³ The command PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE may store the successful verified public key temporarily in the *publicKeyList* or persistently in the *persistentPublicKeyList*. Public keys in the *persistentPublicKeyList* may be used like root public keys.

User type	Authentication reference data and security attributes	Operations
	<u>Authentication verification data</u> Session key SK4TC <u>Security attributes of SK4TC</u> <i>flagSessionEnabled</i> equal SK4TC <i>negotiationKeyInformation</i>	trusted channel

Table 15: Authentication reference data of the devices and security attributes

115 The following table defines the authentication verification data used by the TSF itself for authentication by external entities (cf. FIA_API.1).

Subject type	Authentication verification data and security attributes	Operations
TSF	Private authentication key <u>Authentication verification data</u> <i>privateKey</i> <u>Security attributes</u> <i>keyIdentifier</i> <i>setAlgorithmIdentifier</i> with <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> <i>lifeCycleStatus</i>	INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE, MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE
TSF	Secure messaging channel key <u>Authentication verification data</u> MAC session key SK4SM <u>Security attributes</u> <i>flagSessionEnabled</i> , <i>macKey</i> and <i>SSCmac</i> , <i>encKey</i> and <i>SSCenc</i> , <i>flagCmdEnc</i> and <i>flagRspEnc</i>	Responses using secure messaging
TSF	Trusted channel <u>Authentication verification data</u> Session key SK4TC <u>Security attributes</u> SK4TC referenced in <i>keyReferenceList.macCalculation</i> and <i>keyReferenceList.dataEncipher</i>	PSO ENCIPHER and PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM used for trusted channel

Table 16: Authentication verification data of the TSF and security attributes

116 The COS specification associates a subject with a *logical channel* and its *channelContext* (cf. [21], chapter 12). The TOE may support one subject respective logical channel or more than one independent subjects respective logical channels, cf. 9 Package Logical Channel. The *channelContext* comprises security attributes of the subject summarized in the following table.

Security attribute	Elements	Comments
<i>interface</i>		The TOE detects whether the communication uses contact based interface (value set to <i>kontaktbehaftet</i>), or contactless interface (value

Security attribute	Elements	Comments
		set to <i>kontaktlos</i>) ¹⁴ . If the TOE does not support contactless communication the TOE shall behave as <i>interfaceDependentAccess</i> <i>Rules</i> is permanently set to “ <i>kontaktbehaftet</i> ”.
<i>currentFolder</i>		Identifier of the (unique) current folder
	<i>seIdentifier</i>	Security environment selected by means of command <code>MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT</code> ¹⁵ . If no security environment is explicitly selected the default security environment #1 is assumed.
<i>keyReferenceList</i>		The list contains elements which may be empty or may contain one pair (<i>keyReference</i> , <i>algorithmIdentifier</i>).
	<i>externalAuthenticate</i>	<i>keyReference</i> and <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> of the key selected by means of the command <code>MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT</code> to be used for device authentication by means of commands <code>EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE</code> and <code>MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE</code>
	<i>internalAuthenticate</i>	<i>keyReference</i> and <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> of the key selected by means of the command <code>MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT</code> to be used for authentication of the TSF itself by means of commands <code>INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE</code>
	<i>verifyCertificate</i>	<i>keyReference</i> of the key selected by means of the command <code>MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT</code> to be used for <code>PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE</code>
	<i>signatureCreation</i>	<i>keyReference</i> and <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> of the key selected by means of the command <code>MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT</code> to be used for <code>PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE</code>
	<i>dataDecipher</i>	<i>keyReference</i> and <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> of the key selected by means of the command <code>MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT</code> to be used for <code>PSO DECIPHER</code> or <code>PSO TRANSCIPHER</code>
	<i>dataEncipher</i>	<i>keyReference</i> and <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> of the key selected by means of the command <code>MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT</code> to be used for <code>PSO ENCIPHER</code> .
	<i>macCalculation</i>	<i>keyReference</i> and <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> of the key selected by means of the command <code>MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT</code> to be used for <code>PSO</code>

¹⁴ Note the COS specification [21] describes this security attribute in the context of access control rules in chapter 8.1.4 only. If the TOE does not support contactless communication the document in hand shall be read assuming that this attribute is equal to “*kontaktbehaftet*”.

¹⁵ Note the COS specification [21] describes this security attribute in the informative chapter 8.8. The object system specification of the eHCP uses this security attribute for access control rules of batch signature creation.

Security attribute	Elements	Comments
		COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM and PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM
<i>SessionkeyContext</i>		This list contains security attributes associated with secure messaging and trusted channels.
	<i>flagSessionEnabled</i>	Value <i>noSK</i> indicates no session key established. Value <i>SK4SM</i> indicates session keys established for receiving commands and sending responses. Value <i>SK4TC</i> indicates session keys established for PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM, PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM and PSO ENCIPHER, PSO DECIPHER.
	<i>encKey</i> and <i>SSCenc</i>	Key for encryption and decryption and its sequence counter
	<i>macKey</i> and <i>SSCmac</i>	Key for MAC calculation and verification and its sequence counter
	<i>flagCmdEnc</i> and <i>flagRspEnc</i>	Flags indicating encryption of data in commands respective responses
	<i>negotiationKeyInformation</i>	<i>keyIdentifier</i> of the key used to generate the session keys and if asymmetric key was used the <i>accessRigth</i> associated with this key. The <i>keyIdentifier</i> may reference to the authentication reference data used for PACE.
	<i>accessRulesSession-keys</i>	Access control rules associated with trusted channel support .
<i>globalPasswordList</i>	(<i>pwReference</i> , <i>securityStatusEvaluationCounter</i>)	List of 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 elements containing results of successful human user authentication with password in MF: <i>pwReference</i> and <i>securityStatusEvaluationCounter</i>
<i>dfPasswordList</i>	(<i>pwReference</i> , <i>securityStatusEvaluationCounter</i>)	List of 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 elements containing results of successful human user authentication with password for each DF: <i>pwReference</i> and <i>securityStatusEvaluationCounter</i>
<i>globalSecurityList</i>	<i>CHA</i> or <i>keyIdentifier</i>	List of 0, 1, 2 or 3 elements containing results of successful device authentication with authentication reference data in MF: <i>CHA</i> as reference to the role gained by authentication based on certificate or <i>keyIdentifier</i> as reference to the used symmetric authentication key or <i>keyIdentifier</i> generated by successful authentication with PACE protocol.
<i>dfSecurityList</i>	<i>CHA</i> or <i>keyIdentifier</i>	List of 0, 1, 2 or 3 elements containing results of successful device authentication with authentication reference data for each DF: <i>CHA</i> <i>CHA</i> as reference to the role gained by authentication based on certificate or <i>keyIdentifier</i> as reference to symmetric

Security attribute	Elements	Comments
		authentication key or <i>keyIdentifier</i> generated by successful authentication with PACE protocol ¹⁶ .
<i>bitSecurityList</i>		List of CHAT gained by successful authentication with CVC based on ECC. The effective access rights are the intersection of access rights defined in CVC of the CVC chain up to the root.
<i>Current file</i>		Identifier of the (unique) current file from <i>currentFolder.children</i>
<i>securityStatusEvaluationCounter</i>	<i>startSsec</i>	Must contain all values of <i>startSsec</i> and may be <i>empty</i>

Table 17: Security attributes of a subject

117 The following tables provide an overview of the objects, operations and security attributes defined in the current PP (including the packages). All references in the table refer to the technical specification of the card operating system [21].

Object type	Security attributes	Operations
Folder (8.3.1)	<i>accessRules:</i> <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> <i>shareable</i> ¹⁷ <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> <i>children</i>	SELECT ACTIVATE DEACTIVATE DELETE FINGERPRINT GET RANDOM ¹⁸ LOAD APPLICATION TERMINATE DF
Dedicated File (8.3.1.2)	<u>Additionally to Folder:</u> <i>fileIdentifier</i>	<u>Identical to Folder</u>
Application (8.3.1.1)	<u>Additionally to Folder:</u> <i>applicationIdentifier</i>	<u>Identical to Folder</u>
Application Dedicated File (8.3.1.3)	<u>Additionally to Folder:</u> <i>fileIdentifier</i> <i>applicationIdentifier</i> <i>children</i>	<u>Identical to Folder</u>
Elementary File (8.3.2)	<i>fileIdentifier</i> <i>list of shortFileIdentifier</i> <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> <i>shareable</i> ¹⁹ <i>accessRules:</i> <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> <i>flagTransactionMode</i>	SELECT ACTIVATE DEACTIVATE DELETE TERMINATE

¹⁶ The *keyIdentifier* generated by successful authentication with PACE protocol is named “Kartenverbindungsobjekt” in the COS specification [21].

¹⁷ Available with package logical channel

¹⁸ Only available with package crypto box

¹⁹ Available with package logical channel

Object type	Security attributes	Operations
	<i>flagChecksum</i>	
Transparent EF (8.3.2.1)	<u>Additionally to Elementary File:</u> <i>numberOfOctet</i> <i>positionLogicalEndOfFile</i> <i>Body</i>	<u>Additionally to Elementary File:</u> ERASE BINARY READ BINARY UPDATE BINARY WRITE BINARY
Structured EF (8.3.2.2)	<u>Additionally to Elementary File:</u> <i>recordList</i> <i>maximumNumberOfRecords</i> <i>maximumRecordLength</i> <i>flagRecordLifeCycleStatus</i>	<u>Additionally to Elementary File:</u> ACTIVATE RECORD APPEND RECORD DEACTIVATE RECORD ERASE RECORD READ RECORD SEARCH RECORD UPDATE RECORD
Regular Password (8.4) (PIN)	<i>lifeCycleStatus</i> <i>pwdIdentifier</i> <i>accessRules:</i> <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> <i>secret: PIN</i> <i>minimumLength</i> <i>maximumLength</i> <i>startRetryCounter</i> <i>retryCounter</i> <i>transportStatus</i> <i>flagEnabled</i> <i>startSsecList</i> <i>PUC</i> <i>pukUsage</i> channel specific: <i>securityStatusEvaluationCounter</i>	ACTIVATE DEACTIVATE DELETE TERMINATE CHANGE REFERENCE DATA DISABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT ENABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT GET PIN STATUS RESET RETRY COUNTER VERIFY
Multi-reference Password (8.5) (MR-PIN)	<i>lifeCycleStatus</i> <i>pwdIdentifier</i> <i>accessRules:</i> <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> <i>startSsecList</i> <i>flagEnabled</i> <i>passwordReference</i> Attributes used together with <i>referred password (PIN):</i> <i>secret: PIN</i> <i>minimumLength</i> <i>maximumLength</i> <i>startRetryCounter</i> <i>retryCounter</i> <i>transportStatus</i> <i>PUC</i> <i>pukUsage</i>	<u>Identical to Regular Password</u>

Object type	Security attributes	Operations
	channel specific: <i>securityStatusEvaluationCounter</i>	
PUC	<i>type pin</i> <i>pukUsage</i>	RESET RETRY COUNTER
Symmetric Key (8.6.1)	<i>lifeCycleStatus</i> <i>keyIdentifier</i> <i>accessRules:</i> <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> <i>encKey</i> <i>macKey</i> <i>numberScenario</i> <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> <i>accessRulesSessionkeys:</i> <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i>	ACTIVATE DEACTIVATE DELETE TERMINATE EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE GENERAL AUTHENTICATE INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE
Private Asymmetric Key (8.6.4)	<i>lifeCycleStatus</i> <i>keyIdentifier</i> <i>accessRules:</i> <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> <i>privateKey</i> <i>listAlgorithmIdentifier</i> <i>accessRulesSessionkeys:</i> <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> <i>algorithmIdentifier</i> <i>keyAvailable</i>	ACTIVATE DEACTIVATE DELETE TERMINATE GENERATE ASYMMETRIC KEY PAIR or key import EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE GENERAL AUTHENTICATE INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE PSO DECIPHER PSO TRANSCRIPHER
Public Asymmetric Key (8.6.4)	<i>lifeCycleStatus</i> <i>keyIdentifier</i> <i>oid</i> <i>accessRules:</i> <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i>	ACTIVATE DEACTIVATE DELETE TERMINATE
Public Asymmetric Key for signature verification (8.6.4.2)	Additionally to Public Asymmetric Key: <i>publicRsaKey: oid</i> or <i>publicElcKey: oid</i> <i>CHAT</i> <i>expirationDate: date</i>	Additionally to Public Asymmetric Key: PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE, PSO VERIFY DIGITAL SIGNATURE
Public Asymmetric Key for Authentication (8.6.4.3)	<i>publicRsaKey: oid</i> or <i>publicElcKey: oid</i> <i>CHA</i> <i>CHAT</i>	Additionally to Public Asymmetric Key: EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE

Object type	Security attributes	Operations
	<i>expirationDate: date</i>	GENERAL AUTHENTICATE INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE
Public Asymmetric Key for Encryption (8.6.4.4)	Additionally to Public Asymmetric Key: <i>publicRsaKey: oid</i> <i>publicElcKey: oid</i>	Additionally to Public Asymmetric Key: PSO ENCIPHER

Table 18: Subjects, objects, operations and security attributes. The references refer to [21].

118 The TOE must support Access control lists for

- *lifeCycleStatus* values “*Operation state(activated)*”, “*Operation state(deactivated)*” and “*Termination state*”,
- *security environments* with value *seIdentifier* selected for the folder
- *interfaceDependentAccessRules* for contact based communication and may support Access control lists for
- *interfaceDependentAccessRules* for contactless communication (cf. chapter 8 Package Contactless).

119 If the user communicates with the TOE through the contact based interface the security attribute “*interface*” of the subject is set to the value “*kontaktbehaftet*” and the *interfaceDependentAccessRules* for contact based communication shall apply. If the user communicates with the TOE through the contactless interface the security attribute “*interface*” of the subject is set to the value “*kontaktlos*” and the *interfaceDependentAccessRules* for contactless communication shall apply. If the TOE does not support the contactless communication it behaves in respect to access control like a TOE defining all *interfaceDependentAccessRules* “*kontaktlos*” set to *NEVER* in the object system.

120 The user may set the *seIdentifier* value of the *security environments* for the folder by means of the command `MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT`. This may be seen as selection of a specific set of access control rules for the folder and the objects in this folder.²⁰

121 The TOE access control rule contains

- command defined by CLA, 0 or 1 parameter P1, and 0 or 1 parameter P2,
- values of the *lifeCycleStatus* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules* indicating the set of access control rules to be applied,
- access control condition defined as Boolean expression with Boolean operators AND and OR of Boolean elements of the following types *ALWAYS*, *NEVER*, *PWD(pwIdentifier)*, *AUT(keyReference)*, *AUT(CHA)*, *AUT(CHAT)* and secure messaging conditions (cf. [21], chapter 10.2 for details).

Note *AUT(CHAT)* is true if the access right bit necessary for the object and the command is 1 in the effective access rights calculated as bitwise-AND of all *CHAT* in the CVC chain verified successfully by `PSO VERIFY DIGITAL SIGNATURE` command executions.

²⁰ This approach is used e.g. for signature creation with eHPC: the signatory selects security environment #1 for single signature, and security environment #2 for batch signature creation requiring additional authentication of the signature creation application.

- 122 The Boolean element ALWAYS provides the Boolean value TRUE. The Boolean element NEVER provides the Boolean value FALSE. The other Boolean elements provides the Boolean value TRUE if the value in the access control list match its corresponding security attribute of the subject and provides the Boolean value FALSE is they do not match.
- 123 The following table gives an overview of the commands the COS has to implement. Please note that the commands printed in *italic* are described in the packages. Some commands are may be or may be not implemented by the COS as defined in [21].

Operation	SFR	Chapter
ACTIVATE	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/Life	14.2.1
ACTIVATE RECORD	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/SEF	14.4.1
APPEND RECORD	FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACF.1/SEF	14.4.2
CHANGE REFERENCE DATA	FIA_UAU.5, FIA_USB.1, FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MTD.1/PIN, FMT_MSA.1/PIN, FIA_AFL.1/PIN	14.6.1
CREATE	This command is optional and therefore not addressed in the SFRs of this PP.	14.2.2
DEACTIVATE	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/PIN	14.2.3
DEACTIVATE RECORD	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/PIN	14.4.3
DELETE	FIA_USB.1, FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACF.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACC.1/EF, FDP_ACF.1/EF, FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3, FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/Life, FCS_CKM.4, <i>FIA_USB.1/LC</i>	14.2.4
DISABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/PIN, FIA_AFL.1/PIN	14.6.2
ENABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/PIN, FIA_AFL.1/PIN	14.6.3
ENVELOPE	This command is optional and therefore not addressed in the SFRs of this PP.	14.9.1
ERASE BINARY	FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACF.1/TEF	14.3.1
ERASE RECORD	FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACF.1/SEF, FMT_MSA.1/SEF	14.4.4
EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE	FIA_UAU.4, FIA_UAU.5, FIA_USB.1, FCS_RNG.1, FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.V, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.V, <i>FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES, FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC, FCS_COP.1/CB.AES, FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC</i>	14.7.1
FINGERPRINT	FPT_ITE.1, FDP_ACF.1/ MF_DF	14.9.2
GENERAL AUTHENTICATE	FIA_UAU.4, FIA_UAU.5, FIA_UAU.6, FIA_API.1, FIA_USB.1, FCS_RNG.1, FCS_COP.1/ COS.AES, FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, <i>FIA_UAU.5/PACE, FIA_UAU.6/ PACE, FIA_USB.1/</i>	14.7.2

Operation	SFR	Chapter
	PACE	
GENERATE ASYMMETRIC KEY PAIR	FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3, FMT_SMF.1, FCS_CKM.1/RSA, FCS_CKM.1/ELC	14.9.2
GET CHALLENGE	FCS_RNG.1	14.9.3
GET DATA	This command is optional and therefore not addressed in the SFRs of this PP.	14.5.1
GET PIN STATUS	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/PIN	14.6.4
GET RANDOM	FCS_RNG.1, FCS_RNG.1/GR	14.9.4
GET RESPONSE	This command is optional and therefore not addressed in the SFRs of this PP.	14.9.5
GET SECURITY STATUS KEY	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/Auth	14.7.3
INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE	FIA_API.1, FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S, FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES, FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC, FCS_COP.1/CB.AES, FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC	14.7.4
LOAD APPLICATION	FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACF.1/ MF_DF, FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/Life	14.2.5
MANAGE CHANNEL	FIA_UID.1, FIA_UAU.1, FIA_USB.1/LC, FMT_MSA.3	14.9.6
MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT	FIA_USB.1, FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3	14.9.7
MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE	FIA_UAU.4, FIA_UAU.5, FIA_UAU.6, FIA_API.1, FIA_USB.1, FCS_RNG.1, FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES, FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC, FCS_COP.1/CB.AES, FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC	14.7.1
PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM	FIA_API.1, FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FCS_COP.1/ COS.CMAC, FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC, FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC, FIA_UAU.5/PACE, FIA_UAU.6/PACE, FIA_USB.1/PACE	14.8.1
PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE, WITHOUT "RECOVERY"	FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S	14.8.2.1
PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE, WITH "RECOVERY"	FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S	14.8.2.2
PSO DECIPHER	FIA_USB.1, FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC, FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES, FCS_COP.1/CB.AES, FIA_UAU.5/PACE, FIA_UAU.6/PACE, FIA_USB.1/PACE	14.8.3
PSO ENCIPHER	FIA_API.1, FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC,	14.8.4

Operation	SFR	Chapter
	<i>FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES, FCS_COP.1/CB.AES, FCS_COP.1/CB.RSA, FCS_COP.1/CB.ELC</i>	
PSO HASH, [ISO/IEC 7816-8]	This command is optional and therefore not addressed in the SFRs of this PP.	-
PSO TRANSCIPHER USING RSA	FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC	14.8.6.1
PSO TRANSCIPHER USING ELC	FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC	14.8.6.3
PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MTD.1/Auth, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.V, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.V	14.8.7
PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM	FIA_USB.1, FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RMAC, FCS_COP.1/ COS.CMAC, <i>FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC</i>	14.8.8
PSO VERIFY DIGITAL SIGNATURE	FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FDP_ACF.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.V	14.8.9
PUT DATA	This command is optional and therefore not addressed in the SFRs of this PP.	14.5.2
READ BINARY	FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACF.1/TEF	14.3.2
READ RECORD	FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACF.1/SEF	14.4.5
RESET RETRY COUNTER	FIA_AFL.1/PUC, FIA_UAU.5, FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MTD.1/PIN, FMT_MSA.1/PIN	14.6.5
SEARCH BINARY	This command is optional and therefore not addressed in the SFRs of this PP.	14.3.3
SEARCH RECORD	FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACF.1/SEF	14.4.6
SELECT	FIA_USB.1, FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACF.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACC.1/EF, FDP_ACF.1/EF	14.2.6
TERMINATE	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/Life	14.2.9
TERMINATE CARD USAGE	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/Life	14.2.7
TERMINATE DF	FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/Life	14.2.8
UPDATE BINARY	FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACF.1/TEF	14.3.4
UPDATE RECORD	FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACF.1/SEF	14.4.7
VERIFY	FIA_AFL.1/PIN, FIA_UAU.5, FIA_USB.1, FMT_SMF.1, FMT_MSA.1/PIN	14.6.6
WRITE BINARY	FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACF.1/TEF	14.3.5
WRITE RECORD	This command is optional and therefore not addressed in the SFRs of this PP.	14.4.8

Table 19: Mapping between commands described in COS specification [21] and the SFR

124 *Application note 5:* An implementation has to support the data types and the limits for the data types given in [21] exactly. If an implementation of COS supports additional values / types or extends limits it must be guaranteed that no security objective can be undermined. A justification for each additional difference and why it does not undermine a security objective has to be given from the developer.

125 *Application note 6:* If an implementation of COS accepts objects that do not follow defined rules it must be guaranteed that no security objective can be undermined. A justification for each accepted object and why it does not undermine a security objective has to be given from the developer.

126 *Application note 7:* If an implementation of COS implements additional functionality not described in [21] it must be guaranteed that the additional functionality can not undermined any security objective. A justification for added additional functionality and why it does not undermine any security objective has to be given from the developer (cf. SAR ADV_ARC.1). If the additional functionality implements further TSF with cryptographic mechanisms the SFR component FCS_COP has to be iterated corresponding to the new introduced cryptographic functionality.

6.1.3 Security Functional Requirements for the TOE taken over from BSI-PP-0035

127 All SFRs from section 6.1 "Security Functional Requirements for the TOE" of the BSI-PP-0035 are part of this PP. On all SFR of the BSI-PP-0035 an iteration operation is performed. For the iteration operation the suffix "/SICP" is added to the SFR name from BSI-PP-0035.

128 The complete list of the SFRs taken over from BSI-PP-0035 follows. For further descriptions, details, and interpretations refer section 6.1 in BSI-PP-0035 [11].

- FRU_FLT.2/SICP: Limited fault tolerance.
- FPT_FLS.1/SICP: Failure with preservation of secure state.
- FMT_LIM.1/SICP: Limited capabilities.
- FMT_LIM.2/SICP: Limited capabilities
- FAU_SAS.1/SICP: Audit storage
- FPT_PHP.3/SICP: Resistance to physical attack.
- FDP_ITT.1/SICP: Basic internal transfer protection.
- FPT_ITT.1/SICP: Basic internal TSF data transfer protection.
- FDP_IFC.1/SICP: Subset information flow control.
- FCS_RNG.1/SICP: Random number generation

129 Table 20 maps the SFR name in this PP to the SFR name in BSI-PP-0035 [11]. This approach allows an easy and unambiguous identification which SFR was taken over from the BSI-PP-0035 into this Protection Profile and which SFR is defined newly in this PP.

SFR name	SFR name in [11]	Reference to paragraph in [11]
FRU_FLT.2/SICP	FRU_FLT.2	140
FPT_FLS.1/SICP	FPT_FLS.1	141
FMT_LIM.1/SICP	FMT_LIM.1	150
FMT_LIM.2/SICP	FMT_LIM.2	151
FAU_SAS.1/SICP	FAU_SAS.1	152
FPT_PHP.3/SICP	FPT_PHP.3	156
FDP_ITT.1/SICP	FDP_ITT.1	159
FPT_ITT.1/SICP	FPT_ITT.1	160

SFR name	SFR name in [11]	Reference to paragraph in [11]
FDP_IFC.1/SICP	FDP_IFC.1	161
FCS_RNG.1/SICP	FCS_RNG.1	164

Table 20: Mapping between SFR names in this PP and the SFR names in the BSI-PP-0035 [11]

130 In some cases security functional components have been added or refined. Please refer section for details. The refinements of the security functional are only being applied for the SFR for the TOE taken over from BSI-PP-0035 [11] (see Table 20).

6.1.4 General Protection of User data and TSF data

131 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Subset residual information protection (FDP_RIP.1)” as specified below.

FDP_RIP.1	Subset residual information protection
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FDP_RIP.1.1	The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the [selection: <i>allocation of the resource to, deallocation of the resource from</i>] the following objects: <u>password objects, secret cryptographic keys, private cryptographic keys, session keys, [assignment: <i>other data objects</i>]</u> ²¹ .

132 *Application note 8:* The writer of the Security Target may want to use iterations of FDP_RIP.1 in order to distinguish between data, which must be deleted already upon deallocation and those which can be deleted upon allocation. It is recommended to delete secret/private cryptographic keys and all passwords upon deallocation. For secret user data deletion upon allocation should be sufficient (depending on the resistance of the concrete TOE against physical attacks). Note that the COS specification allows management of applications during operational use. Therefore it is theoretically possible that a newly created object uses memory areas, which belonged to another object before. Therefore the COS must ensure that contents of the deleted objects are not accessible by reading the new object. The open assign operation may be “none”.

133 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Failure with preservation of secure state (FPT_FLS.1)” as specified below.

FPT_FLS.1	Failure with preservation of secure state
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FPT_FLS.1.1	The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) <u>exposure to operating conditions where therefore a malfunction could occur</u>

²¹ [assignment: *list of objects*].

(2) failure detected by TSF according to FPT_TST.1²².

134 The TOE shall meet the requirement “FPT_EMS.1 (FPT_EMS.1)” as specified below (CC part 2 extended).

FPT_EMS.1	Emanation of TSF and User data
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FPT_EMS.1.1	<p>The TOE shall not emit [assignment: <i>types of emissions</i>] in excess of [assignment: <i>specified limits</i>] enabling access to <u>the following TSF data</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>Regular password,</u>(2) <u>Multi-Reference password,</u>(3) <u>PUC,</u>(4) <u>Session keys,</u>(5) <u>Symmetric authentication keys,</u>(6) <u>Private authentication keys,</u>(7) <u>[assignment: <i>list of additional types of TSF data</i>]²³</u> <p>and <u>the following user data</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(8) <u>Private asymmetric keys,</u>(9) <u>Symmetric keys,</u>(10) <u>[assignment: <i>list of additional types of user data</i>]²⁴.</u>
FPT_EMS.1.2	<p>The TSF shall ensure <u>any user</u>²⁵ are unable to use the following interface circuit interfaces²⁶ to gain access to <u>the following TSF data</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>Regular password</u>(2) <u>Multi-Reference password</u>(3) <u>PUC</u>(4) <u>Session keys</u>(5) <u>Symmetric authentication keys</u>(6) <u>Private authentication keys</u>(7) <u>[assignment: <i>list of additional types of TSF data</i>]²⁷</u> <p>and <u>the following user data</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(8) <u>Private asymmetric keys</u>(9) <u>Symmetric keys</u>(10) <u>[assignment: <i>list of additional types of user data</i>]²⁸</u>

²² [assignment: *list of types of failures in the TSF*]

²³ [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*]

²⁴ [assignment: *list of types of user data*]

²⁵ [assignment: *type of users*]

²⁶ [assignment: *type of connection*]

²⁷ [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*]

135 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency (FPT_TDC.1)” as specified below.

FPT_TDC.1	Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FPT_TDC.1.1	The TSF shall provide the capability to consistently interpret <u>Card Verifiable Certificate (CVC)</u> ²⁹ when shared between the TSF and another trusted IT product.
FPT_TDC.1.2	The TSF shall use [21], chapter 7 “CV-Certificate” and [21], appendix H “CV-Certificate for ELC-keys” ³⁰ when interpreting the TSF data from another trusted IT product.

136 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Export of TOE implementation fingerprint (FPT_ITE.1)” as specified below.

FPT_ITE.1	Export of TOE implementation fingerprint
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FPT_ITE.1.1	The TOE shall export fingerprint of TOE implementation given the following conditions <u>execution of the command FINGERPRINT [21]</u> ³¹ .
FPT_ITE.1.2	The TSF shall use <u>[selection: SHA-256 based fingerprint of the TOE implementation, SHA-384 based fingerprint of the TOE implementation, SHA-512 based fingerprint of the TOE implementation, CMAC based fingerprint of the TOE implementation using [selection: AES128, AES-192, AES-256] with cryptographic key size [selection: 128, 192, 256] bit that meet the following standard FIPS180-4 [37], NIST SP800-38B [36]</u> ³² for the exported data.

137 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Export of TSF data (FPT_ITE.2)” as specified below.

FPT_ITE.2	Export of TSF data
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FPT_ITE.2.1	The TOE shall export <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>all public authentication reference data,</u>(2) <u>all security attributes for all objects of the object system for all commands,</u>

²⁸ [assignment: list of types of user data]

²⁹ [assignment: list of TSF data types]

³⁰ [assignment: list of interpretation rules to be applied by the TSF]

³¹ [assignment: conditions for export]

³² [assignment: list of generation rules to be applied by TSF]

(3) [assignment: list of all TOE specific security attributes not described in COS specification [21]]³³

given the following conditions

- (1) no export of secret data.
- (2) no export of private keys.
- (3) no export of secure messaging keys.
- (4) no export of passwords and PUC³⁴.

FPT_ITE.2.2 The TSF shall use [assignment: *list of encoding rules to be applied by TSF*] for the exported data.

138 *Application note 9:* The public TSF data addressed as TSF data in bullet (1) in the element FPT_ITE.2.1 covers at least all root public key and other public keys used as authentication reference data (cf. *persistentPublicKeyList*) stored in the object system. The bullet (2) in the element FPT_ITE.2.1 covers all security attributes of all objects of object types listed in Table 18 and all TOE specific security attributes and parameters. The COS specification [21] identifies optional functionality the TOE may support. The TOE (as COS, wrapper and guidance documentation) must support the user to find all objects and to export all security attributes of these objects. Note while MF, DF and EF are hierarchically structured the Application and Application Dedicated File are directly referenced which may require special methods to find all objects in the object system. The exported data shall be encoded by wrapper to allow interpretation of the TSF data. The encoding rules shall meet the requirements of the Technical Guidance TR-03143 describing the verification tool used for examination of the object system against the specification of the object system.

139 The TOE shall meet the requirement “TSF testing (FPT_TST.1)” as specified below.

FPT_TST.1 TSF testing

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

FPT_TST.1.1 The TSF shall run a suite of self tests during initial start-up³⁵ to demonstrate the correct operation of the TSF³⁶.

FPT_TST.1.2 The TSF shall provide authorised users with the capability to verify the integrity of TSF data³⁷.

FPT_TST.1.3 The TSF shall provide authorised users with the capability to verify the integrity of TSF³⁸.

³³ [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*]

³⁴ [assignment: *conditions for export*]

³⁵ [selection: *during initial start-up, periodically during normal operation, at the request of the authorised user, at the conditions [assignment: conditions under which self test should occur]*]

³⁶ [selection: *[assignment: parts of TSF], the TSF*]

³⁷ [selection: *[assignment: parts of TSF data], TSF data*]

³⁸ [selection: *[assignment: parts of TSF], TSF*]

6.1.5 Authentication

140 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Authentication failure handling (FIA_AFL.1/PIN)” as specified below.

FIA_AFL.1/PIN	Authentication failure handling
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication.
FIA_AFL.1.1/PIN	The TSF shall detect when an administrator <u>configurable positive integer within 1 to 15³⁹ unsuccessful authentication attempts occur related to consecutive failed human user authentication for the PIN via VERIFY, ENABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT, DISABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT or CHANGE REFERENCE DATA command⁴⁰.</u>
FIA_AFL.1.2/PIN	When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been <u>met⁴¹</u> , the TSF shall <u>block the password for authentication until successful unblock with unblocking code PUC⁴².</u>

141 *Application note 10:* The component FIA_AFL.1/PIN addresses the human user authentication by means of a password. The configurable positive integer of unsuccessful authentication attempts is defined in the password objects of the object system.”Consecutive failed authentication attempts” are counted separately for each PIN and interrupted by successful authentication attempt for this PIN, i.e. the PIN object has a *retryCounter* which is initially set to *startRetryCounter*, decremented by each failed authentication attempt and reset to *startRetryCounter* by successful authentication with the PIN or by successful execution of the command RESET_RETRY_COUNTER.

142 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Authentication failure handling (FIA_AFL.1/PUC)” as specified below.

FIA_AFL.1/PUC	Authentication failure handling
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication.
FIA_AFL.1.1/PUC	The TSF shall detect when an administrator <u>configurable positive integer within 1 to 15⁴³ unsuccessful⁴⁴ authentication attempts occur related to usage of a password unblocking code using the RESET_RETRY_COUNTER command⁴⁵.</u>

³⁹ [assignment: *positive integer number*], *an administrator configurable positive integer within [assignment: range of acceptable values]*

⁴⁰ [assignment: *list of authentication events*]

⁴¹ [selection: *met, surpassed*]

⁴² [assignment: *list of actions*]

⁴³ [assignment: *positive integer number*], *an administrator configurable positive integer within [assignment: range of acceptable values]*

⁴⁴ Refinement: not only unsuccessful but all attempts shall be counted here – obviously this refinement is valid, because the original requirement is still fulfilled.

⁴⁵ [assignment: *list of authentication events*]

FIA_AFL.1.2/PUC When the defined number of unsuccessful⁴⁶ authentication attempts has been met⁴⁷, the TSF shall [assignment: list of actions, which at least includes: block the password unblocking code]⁴⁸.

143 *Application note 11:* The component FIA_AFL.1/PUC addresses the human user authentication by means of a PUC. The configurable positive integer of usage of password unblocking code is defined in the password objects of the object system.

144 *Application note 12:* The command RESET RETRY COUNTER can be used to change a password or reset a retry counter. In certain cases, for example for digital signature applications, the usage of the command RESET RETRY COUNTER must be restricted to the ability to reset a retry counter only.

145 The TOE shall meet the requirement “User attribute definition (FIA_ATD.1)” as specified below.

FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition
Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: No dependencies.
FIA_ATD.1.1 The TSF shall maintain the following list of security attributes belonging to individual users:
(1) for Human User: authentication state gained
a. with password: *pwdIdentifier* in *globalPasswordList* and *pwdIdentifier* in *dfSpecificPasswordList*,
b. with Multi-Reference password: *pwdIdentifier* in *globalPasswordList* and *pwdIdentifier* in *dfSpecificPasswordList*,
(2) for Device: authentication state gained
a. by CVC with CHA in *globalSecurityList* if CVC is stored in MF and *dfSpecificSecurityList* if CVC is stored in a DF,
b. by CVC with CHAT in *bitSecurityList*,
c. with symmetric authentication key: *keyIdentity* of the key,
d. with secure messaging keys: *keyIdentity* of the key used for establishing the session key⁴⁹.

146 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Timing of authentication (FIA_UAU.1)” as specified below.

FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication
Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification.
FIA_UAU.1.1 The TSF shall allow
(1) reading the ATR,
(2) [selection: *GET CHALLENGE, MANAGE CHANNEL, MANAGE*

⁴⁶ Refinement: not only unsuccessful but all attempts shall be counted here – obviously this refinement is valid, because the original requirement is still fulfilled.

⁴⁷ [selection: *met, surpassed*]

⁴⁸ [assignment: *list of actions*]

⁴⁹ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

SECURITY ENVIRONMENT, SELECT]

- (3) commands with access control rule ALWAYS for the current life cycle status and depending on the interface,
- (4) [assignment: list of additional TSF mediated actions]⁵⁰
on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.

FIA_UAU.1.2 The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

147 *Application note 13:* The TOE may or may not define TOE specific access control rules for the commands GET CHALLENGE, MANAGE CHANNEL, MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT and SELECT, cf. COS specification [21], (N022.810). If the TOE does not define access control limitation for a command than the TOE shall allow the access for anybody (ALWAYS) and the ST author shall list the command in the element FIA_UAU.1.1.

148 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Single-use authentication mechanisms (FIA_UAU.4)” as specified below.

FIA_UAU.4 Single-use authentication mechanisms
Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: No dependencies.
FIA_UAU.4.1 The TSF shall prevent reuse of authentication data related to
 (1) external device authentication by means of executing the command EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE with symmetric or asymmetric key,
 (2) external device authentication by means of executing the command MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE with symmetric or asymmetric key,
 (3) external device authentication by means of executing the command GENERAL AUTHENTICATE with symmetric or asymmetric key,
 (4) [assignment: additional identified authentication mechanism(s)]⁵¹.

149 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Multiple authentication mechanisms (FIA_UAU.5)” as specified below.

FIA_UAU.5 Multiple authentication mechanisms
Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: No dependencies.
FIA_UAU.5.1 The TSF shall provide
 (1) the execution of the VERIFY command,
 (2) the execution of the CHANGE REFERENCE DATA command,
 (3) the execution of the RESET RETRY COUNTER command,
 (4) the execution of the EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE command,

⁵⁰ [assignment: list of TSF mediated actions]

⁵¹ [assignment: identified authentication mechanism(s)]

- (5) the execution of the MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE command.
- (6) the execution of the GENERAL AUTHENTICATE command.
- (7) a secure messaging channel.
- (8) a trusted channel⁵²

to support user authentication.

FIA_UAU.5.2

The TSF shall authenticate any user's claimed identity according to the following rules:

- (1) password based authentication shall be used for authenticating a human user by means of commands VERIFY, CHANGE REFERENCE DATA and RESET RETRY COUNTER.
- (2) key based authentication mechanisms shall be used for authenticating of devices by means of commands EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE, MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE and GENERAL AUTHENTICATE.
- (3) [assignment: additional rules describing how the multiple authentication mechanisms provide authentication]⁵³.

150 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Re-authenticating (FIA_UAU.6)” as specified below:.

FIA_UAU.6

Re-authenticating

Hierarchical to:

No other components.

Dependencies:

No dependencies.

FIA_UAU.6.1

The TSF shall re-authenticate the ~~user~~ **sender of a message**⁵⁴ under the conditions

- (1) each command sent to the TOE after establishing the secure messaging channel by successful authentication by execution of the INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE and EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE, or MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE or GENERAL AUTHENTICATE commands shall be verified as being sent by the authenticated device.
- (2) each message received after establishing the trusted channel by successful authentication by execution of the a combination of INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE and EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE, or MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE or GENERAL AUTHENTICATE commands shall be verified as being sent by the authenticated device⁵⁵.

151 *Application note 14:* The entities establishing a secure messaging channel respective a trusted channel authenticate each other and agree symmetric session keys. The sender of a command authenticates its message by MAC calculation for the command (cf. PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM using SK4TC) and the receiver of the commands verifies the authentication by MAC verification of commands (using SK4SM). The receiver of the commands authenticates its message by MAC calculation (using SK4SM) and the sender of a command

⁵² [assignment: list of multiple authentication mechanisms]

⁵³ [assignment: rules describing how the multiple authentication mechanisms provide authentication]

⁵⁴ Refinement identifying the concrete user

⁵⁵ [assignment: list of conditions under which re-authentication is required]

verifies the authentication by MAC verification of responses (responses (cf. PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM using SK4TC). If secure messaging is used with encryption the re-authentication includes the encrypted padding in the plaintext as authentication attempt of the message sender (cf. PSO ENCIPHER for commands and secure messaging for responses) and verification of the correct padding as authentication verification by the message receiver(cf. secure messaging for received commands and PSO DECIPHER for received responses). The specification [21] states in section 13.1.2 item (N031.600): This re-authentication is controlled by the external entity (e.g. the connector in the eHealth environment). If no Secure Messaging is indicated in the CLA byte (see [ISO7816-4] Clause 5.1.1) and SessionkeyContext.flagSessionEnabled has the value SK4SM, then the security status of the key that was involved in the negotiation of the session keys MUST be deleted by means of clearSessionKeys(...).” Furthermore item (N031.700) states that the security status of the key that was involved in the negotiation of the session keys MUST be deleted by means of clearSessionKeys(...) if the check of the command CMAC or 3TDES-Retail CBC MAC fails. The TOE does not execute any command with incorrect message authentication code. The TOE checks each command by secure messaging in encrypt-then-authenticate mode based on a MAC, whether it was sent by the successfully authenticated communication partner. The TOE does not execute any command with incorrect MAC. Therefore, the TOE re-authenticates the communication partner connected, if a secure messaging error occurred, and accepts only those commands received from the initially communication partner.

152 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Timing of identification (FIA_UID.1)” as specified below.

FIA_UID.1	Timing of identification
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FIA_UID.1.1	The TSF shall allow <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>reading the ATR</u>(2) <u>[selection: GET CHALLENGE, MANAGE CHANNEL, MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT, SELECT]</u>(3) <u>commands with access control rule ALWAYS for the current life cycle status and depending on the interface,</u>(4) <u>[assignment: list of TSF mediated actions]</u>⁵⁶ on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is identified.
FIA_UID.1.2	The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

153 *Application note 15:* The TOE may or may not define TOE specific access control rules for the commands GET CHALLENGE, MANAGE CHANNEL, MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT and SELECT, cf. COS specification [21], (N022.810). If the TOE does not define access control limitation for these commands then the TOE shall allow the access for anybody (ALWAYS) and the ST author shall list the command in the element FIA_UID.1.1.

154 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Authentication Proof of Identity (FIA_API.1)” as specified below (Common Criteria Part 2 extended (see section 5.1)).

FIA_API.1	Authentication Proof of Identity
Hierarchical to:	No other components.

⁵⁶ [assignment: list of TSF mediated actions]

Dependencies: No dependencies.
FIA_API.1.1 The TSF shall provide

- (1) INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE,
- (2) MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE,
- (3) GENERAL AUTHENTICATE,
- (4) PSO ENCIPHER and PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM with SK4TC used for trusted channel commands⁵⁷

to prove the identity of the TSF itself⁵⁸.

155 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Security roles (FMT_SMR.1)” as specified below:

FMT_SMR.1 Security roles
Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification
FMT_SMR.1.1 The TSF shall maintain the roles

- (1) World as unauthenticated user without authentication reference data,
- (2) Human User authenticated by password in the role defined for this password,
- (3) Human User authenticated by PUC as holder of the corresponding password,
- (4) Device authenticated by means of symmetric key in the role defined for this key,
- (5) Device authenticated by means of asymmetric key in the role defined by the Certificate Holder Authorisation in the CVC,
- (6) [assignment: additional authorised identified roles]⁵⁹.

FMT_SMR.1.2 The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

156 *Application note 16:* The protection profile BSI-PP-0035 does not explicitly define role because roles are linked to life cycle of the chip not addressed by SFR. Therefore the current PP defines the role “World” relevant for all parts of the TOE (e.g. physical protection) and roles for COS related SFR. The ST may add developer specific roles, e. g. for TSF data export according to FPT_ITE.1/EXP.

157 *Application note 17:* Human users authenticate themselves by password or PUC. The role gained by authorization with a password is defined in the security attributes of the objects and related to identified commands. The authorization status is valid for the same level and in the level below in the file hierarchy as the password object is stored. The role gained by authentication with a symmetric key is defined in the security attributes of the objects and related to identified commands. The assignment may assign additional role like the role defined for authentication by means of PACE protocol or “none”.

158 The TOE shall meet the requirement “User-subject binding (FIA_USB.1)” as specified below.

⁵⁷ [assignment: *authentication mechanism*]

⁵⁸ [assignment: *authorized user or rule*].

⁵⁹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*].

FIA_USB.1	User-subject binding
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition
FIA_USB.1.1	<p>The TSF shall associate the following user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of that user:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>For Human User authenticated with password: <i>pwIdentifier</i> and Authentication Context <i>globalPasswordList</i> and <i>dfPasswordList</i>.</u>(2) <u>For Human User authenticated with PUC: <i>pwIdentifier</i> of corresponding password.</u>(3) <u>For Device the Role authenticated by RSA based CVC : the Certificate Holder Authorisation (CHA) in the CVC</u>(4) <u>For Device the Role authenticated by ECC based CVC: the Certificate Holder Authorisation Template (CHAT).</u>(5) <u>For Device the Role authenticated by symmetric key: <i>keyIdentifier</i> and Authentication Context.⁶⁰</u>
FIA_USB.1.2	<p>The TSF shall enforce the following rules on the initial association of user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of users:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>Initial Authentication State is “not authenticated”⁶¹.</u>
FIA_USB.1.3	<p>The TSF shall enforce the following rules governing changes to the user security attributes associated with subjects acting on the behalf of users:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>The authentication state is changed to “authenticated Human User” for the specific context when the Human User has successfully authenticated via one of the following procedures:</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a) <u>VERIFY command using the context specific password or the context specific Multi-Reference password.</u>b) <u>CHANGE REFERENCE DATA command using the password or the PUC of the password object.</u>(2) <u>The authentication state is changed to “authenticated Device” for the specific authentication context when a Device has successfully authenticated via one of the following procedures:</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">c) <u>EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE with symmetric or public keys.</u>d) <u>MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE with symmetric or public keys.</u>e) <u>GENERAL AUTHENTICATE with mutual ELC authentication and</u>f) <u>GENERAL AUTHENTICATE for asynchronous secure messaging</u>(3) <u>The effective access rights gained by ECC based CVC: the CHAT are the intersection of the access rights encoded in the CHAT of the CVC chain used as authentication reference data of the Device.</u>(4) <u>All authentication contexts are lost and the authentication state</u>

⁶⁰ [assignment: *list of user security attributes*]

⁶¹ [assignment: *rules for the initial association of attributes*]

- is set to “not authenticated” for all contexts if the TOE is reset.
- (5) If a DELETE command is executed for an object the entity is authenticated for the authentication state has to be set to “not authenticated”.
 - (6) If an authentication attempt using one of the following commands failed the authentication state for the specific context has to be set to “not authenticated”: EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE, MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE, MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT (variant with restore).
 - (7) If a context change by using the SELECT command is performed the authentication state for all objects of the old authentication context not belonging to the new context of the performed SELECT command have to be set to “not authenticated”.
 - (8) If failure of secure messaging (not indicated in CLA-byte, or erroneous MAC, or erroneous cryptogram) is detected the authentication status of the device in the current context set to “not authenticated” (i.e. the element in *globalSecurityList* respective in *dfSecurityList* and the used SK4SM are deleted).
 - (9) If the message received in commands PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM fails the verification or the message received in command PSO DECIPHER fail the padding condition the authentication state of the user bound to the SK4TC is changed to “not authenticated” (i.e. the *keyReferenceList.macCalculation*, *keyReferenceList.dataEncipher* and the SK4TC are deleted).
 - (10) [assignment: further rules for the changing of attributes]⁶².

159 *Application note 18*: Note the security attributes of the user are defined by the authentication reference data. The user may chose security attributes of the subjects *interface* in the power on session and *seIdentifier* by execution of command MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT for the current directory.

6.1.6 Access Control

160 *Application note 19*: This section defines SFR for access control on User data in the object system. The SFR FDP_ACF.1/MF_DF, FDP_ACF.1/EF, FDP_ACF.1/TEF, FDP_ACF.1/SEF and FDP_ACF.1/KEY describe the security attributes of the subject gaining access to these objects. The COS specification [21] describes the attributes of logical channels (i.e. subjects in CC terminology) which is valid for the core of COS including all packages. The *globalSecurityList* and *dfSecurityList* contain all *keyIdentifier* used for successful device authentications, i.e. the list may be empty, may contain a CHA, a key identifier of a symmetric authentication key or CAN (in form of the *keyIdentifier* of the derived key) used with PACE. Because of this common structure there is no need for separate SFR in package Contactless.

161 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Subset access control (FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF)” as specified below.

⁶² [assignment: rules for the changing of attributes]

FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF	Subset access control
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.
FDP_ACC.1.1/ MF_DF	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access control MF_DF SFP</u> ⁶³ on (1) <u>the subjects <i>logical channel</i> bind to users</u> a. <u>World,</u> b. <u>Human User,</u> c. <u>Device,</u> d. <u>Human User and Device,</u> <u>[assignment: <i>list of further subjects</i>],</u> (2) <u>the objects</u> a. <u>MF,</u> b. <u>Application,</u> c. <u>Dedicated file,</u> d. <u>Application dedicated file,</u> e. <u>[assignment: <i>list of further objects</i>],</u> (3) <u>the operation by command following</u> a. <u>SELECT,</u> b. <u>create objects with command LOAD APPLICATION with and</u> <u>without command chaining,</u> c. <u>delete objects with command DELETE,</u> d. <u>read fingerprint with command FINGERPRINT,</u> e. <u>[assignment: <i>all other operations applicable to MF and</i></u> <u>DF].</u> ⁶⁴

162 *Application note 20:* Note the commands ACTIVATE, DEACTIVATE and, TERMINATE DF for current file applicable to MF, DF, Application and Application dedicated file manage the security life cycle attributes. Therefore access control to these commands are described by FMT_MSA.1/Life.

163 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Security attribute based access control (FDP_ACF.1/MF_DF)” as specified below.

FDP_ACF.1/ MF_DF	Security attribute based access control
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation
FDP_ACF.1.1/ MF_DF	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access control MF_DF SFP</u> ⁶⁵ to objects based on the following (1) <u>the subject <i>logical channel</i> with security attributes</u> a. <u><i>interface</i>,</u> b. <u><i>globalPasswordList</i>,</u> c. <u><i>globalSecurityList</i>,</u> d. <u><i>dfPasswordList</i>,</u>

⁶³ [assignment: *access control SFP*]

⁶⁴ [assignment: *list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*]

⁶⁵ [assignment: *access control SFP*]

- e. *dfSecurityList*.
 - f. *bitSecurityList*.
 - g. *SessionkeyContext*.
 - h. [assignment: *further subjects listed in FDP ACC.1.1/MF DF with their security attributes*]
- (2) the objects
- a. MF with security attributes *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
 - b. DF with security attributes *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
 - c. Application with security attributes *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
 - d. Application dedicated file with security attributes *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
 - e. [assignment: *list of further objects listed in FDP ACC.1.1/MF DF with their security attributes*]⁶⁶

⁶⁶ [assignment: *list of subjects and objects controlled under the indicated SFP, and for each, the SFP-relevant security attributes, or named groups of SFP-relevant security attributes*]

FDP_ACF.1.2/
MF_DF

The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed:

- (1) SELECT is [selection:ALWAYS allowed, [assignment: supported access control rules]].
- (2) GET CHALLENGE is [selection:ALWAYS allowed, [assignment: supported access control rules]].
- (3) A subject is allowed to create new objects (user data or TSF data) in the current folder MF if the security attributes *interface*, *globalPasswordList*, *globalSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command LOAD APPLICATION of the MF dependent on *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (4) A subject is allowed to create new objects (user data or TSF data) in the current folder Application, Dedicated file or Application Dedicated file if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command LOAD APPLICATION of this object dependent on *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (5) A subject is allowed to DELETE objects in the current folder MF if the security attributes *interface*, *globalPasswordList*, *globalSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command DELETE of the MF dependent on *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (6) A subject is allowed to DELETE objects in the current Application, Dedicated file or Application, Dedicated file if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command DELETE of this object dependent on *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (7) A subject is allowed to execute command FINGERPRINT according to FPT_ITE.1 if [assignment: list of security attributes of subjects].
- (8) [assignment: further list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP]⁶⁷

FDP_ACF.1.3/
MF_DF

The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: None⁶⁸

FDP_ACF.1.4/
MF_DF

The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: [assignment: rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects].

164 *Application note 21*: The object system defines sets of access control rules depending on the life cycle status, security environment and the used interface (i.e. contact based or contactless interface). The security environment may be chosen for the current folder by means of command MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT. The command SELECT is therefore pre-requisite for many

⁶⁷ [assignment: rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects]

⁶⁸ [assignment: rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects]

other commands. The access control rule defines for each command, which is defined by CLA, INS, P1 and P2 and acceptable for the type of the object, the necessary security state, which is reached by successful authentication of human user and devices, to allow the access to the selected object. Note the command FINGERPRINT process the data representing the TOE implementation like user data (i.e. hash value calculation, no execution or interpretation as code) and is developer specific. Therefore the ST writer shall describe the TOE specific access control rules for these commands. The ST writer shall perform the open operations where “none” is allowed.

165 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Subset access control (FDP_ACC.1/EF)” as specified below.

FDP_ACC.1/EF	Subset access control
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.
FDP_ACC.1.1/EF	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access control EF SFP</u> ⁶⁹ on <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>the subjects logical channel bind to users</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>World,</u>b. <u>Human User,</u>c. <u>Device,</u>d. <u>Human User and Device,</u>e. <u>[assignment: list of further subjects]</u>(2) <u>the objects</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>EF,</u>b. <u>Transparent EF,</u>c. <u>Structured EF,</u>d. <u>[assignment: list of further objects],</u>(3) <u>the operation by command following</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>SELECT,</u>b. <u>DELETE of the current file,</u>c. <u>[assignment: further operations]</u>⁷⁰.

166 *Application note 22:* Note the commands ACTIVATE, DEACTIVATE and, TERMINATE DF for current file applicable to EF, Transparent EF and Structured EF manage the security life cycle attributes. Therefore access control to these commands are described by FMT_MSA.1/Life. The commands CREATE, GET DATA, GET RESPONSE and PUT DATA are optional. If implemented by the TOE these commands shall be added to the corresponding FDP_ACC.1 and FDP_ACF.1 SFR. The commands specific for transparent files are described in FDP_ACC.1/TEF and FDP_ACF.1/TEF SFR. The commands specific for structured files are described in FDP_ACC.1/SEF and FDP_ACF.1/SEF SFR.

167 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Security attribute based access control (FDP_ACF.1/EF)” as specified below.

⁶⁹ [assignment: *access control SFP*]

⁷⁰ [assignment: *list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*]

FDP_ACF.1/EF	Security attribute based access control
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation
FDP_ACF.1.1/EF	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access rule EF SFP</u> ⁷¹ to objects based on the following <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>the subject logical channel with security attributes</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>interface</u>,b. <u>globalPasswordList</u>,c. <u>globalSecurityList</u>,d. <u>dfPasswordList</u>,e. <u>dfSecurityList</u>,f. <u>bitSecurityList</u>,g. <u>SessionkeyContext</u>,h. <u>[assignment: further subjects listed in FDP ACC.1.1/EF]</u>(2) <u>the objects</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>EF with security attributes seIdentifier of the current folder, lifeCycleStatus and interfaceDependentAccessRules of the EF, and [selection: transaction protection Mode, checksum]</u>,b. <u>[assignment: list of further objects listed in FDP ACC.1.1/EF with their security attributes]</u>⁷²
FDP_ACF.1.2/EF	The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed: <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>SELECT is [selection: ALWAYS allowed, [assignment: supported access control rules]]</u>.(2) <u>A subject is allowed to DELETE the current EF if the security attributes interface, dfPasswordList, dfSecurityList and SessionkeyContext of the subject meet the access rules for the command DELETE of this object dependent on lifeCycleStatus, interfaceDependentAccessRules and seIdentifier of the current folder</u>.(3) <u>[assignment: further list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP]</u>⁷³
FDP_ACF.1.3/EF	The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: <u>none</u> ⁷⁴ .
FDP_ACF.1.4/EF	The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: <u>[assignment: rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects]</u>

⁷¹ [assignment: access control SFP]

⁷² [assignment: rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects]

⁷³ [assignment: rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects]

⁷⁴ [assignment: rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects]

168 *Application note 23*: The EF stands here for transparent EF and structured EF, which access control is further refined by FDP_ACF.1/TEF and FDP_ACF.1/SEF. The selection of “transaction protection Mode” and “checksum” may be empty because they are optional in the COS specification [21].

169 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Subset access control (FDP_ACC.1/TEF)” as specified below.

FDP_ACC.1/TEF	Subset access control
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.
FDP_ACC.1.1/TEF	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access rule TEF SFP⁷⁵</u> on <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>the subjects <i>logical channel</i> bind to users</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>World,</u>b. <u>Human User,</u>c. <u>Device,</u>d. <u>Human User and Device,</u>e. <u>[assignment: further <i>subjects</i>]</u>(2) <u>the objects</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>Transparent EF,</u>b. <u>[assignment: <i>list of further objects</i>]</u>(3) <u>the operation by the following command</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>ERASE BINARY,</u>b. <u>READ BINARY,</u>c. <u>UPDATE BINARY,</u>d. <u>WRITE BINARY,</u>e. <u>[assignment: <i>further operation</i>]⁷⁶.</u>

170 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Security attribute based access control (FDP_ACF.1/TEF)” as specified below.

FDP_ACF.1/TEF	Security attribute based access control
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation
FDP_ACF.1.1/TEF	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access rule TEF SFP⁷⁷</u> to objects based on the following <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>the subjects <i>logical channel</i> with security attributes</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u><i>interface,</i></u>b. <u><i>globalPasswordList,</i></u>c. <u><i>globalSecurityList,</i></u>d. <u><i>dfPasswordList,</i></u>e. <u><i>dfSecurityList,</i></u>f. <u><i>bitSecurityList,</i></u>g. <u><i>SessionkeyContext,</i></u>a. <u>[assignment: <i>further subjects listed in FDP_ACC.1.1/TEF</i>]</u>(2) <u>the objects</u>

⁷⁵ [assignment: *access control SFP*]

⁷⁶ [assignment: *list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*]

⁷⁷ [assignment: *access control SFP*]

- a. with security attributes *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules* of the current Transparent EF, and [selection: *transaction protection Mode, checksum*],
- b. [assignment: *list of further objects listed in FDP_ACC.1.1/TEF*]⁷⁸

FDP_ACF.1.2/TEF The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed:

- (1) The subject is allowed to execute the command listed in FDP_ACC.1.1/TEF for the current Transparent EF if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules of this object for this command dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules* of the current Transparent EF.
- (2) [assignment: *further list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*]⁷⁹.

FDP_ACF.1.3/TEF The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: none⁸⁰.

FDP_ACF.1.4/TEF The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: Rules defined in FDP_ACF.1.4/EF apply, and [assignment: *additional rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects*]⁸¹.

171 *Application note 24*: The selection of “transaction protection Mode” and “checksum” may be empty because they are optional in the COS specification [21]. If the checksum of the data to be read by READ BINARY is malicious the TOE must append a warning when exporting. Exporting of malicious data should be taken into account by the evaluator during evaluation of class AVA: vulnerability assessment.

172 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Subset access control (FDP_ACC.1/SEF)” as specified below.

FDP_ACC.1/SEF Subset access control
Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.
FDP_ACC.1.1/
SEF The TSF shall enforce the access rule SEF SFP⁸² on
(1) the subjects *logical channel* bind to users
a. World,
b. Human User
c. Device

⁷⁸ [assignment: *rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects*]

⁷⁹ [assignment: *list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*]

⁸⁰ [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects*]

⁸¹ [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects*]

⁸² [assignment: *access control SFP*]

- d. Human User and Device.
- e. [assignment: further subjects]
- (2) the objects
 - a. record in Structured EF
 - b. [assignment: list of further objects]
- (3) the operation by command following
 - a. Append Record.
 - b. Erase Record.
 - c. Read Record.
 - d. Search Record.
 - e. Update Record.
 - f. [assignment: further operation]⁸³.

173 The command WRITE RECORD is optional. If implemented by the TOE this command shall be added to the corresponding FDP_ACC.1/SEF and FDP_ACF.1/SEF SFR.

174 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Security attribute based access control (FDP_ACF.1/SEF)” as specified below.

FDP_ACF.1/SEF	Security attribute based access control
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation
FDP_ACF.1.1/SEF	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access rule SEF SFP</u> ⁸⁴ to objects based on the following <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>the subjects <i>logical channel</i> with security attributes</u><ul style="list-style-type: none">a. <u><i>interface.</i></u>b. <u><i>globalPasswordList.</i></u>c. <u><i>globalSecurityList.</i></u>d. <u><i>dfPasswordList.</i></u>e. <u><i>dfSecurityList.</i></u>f. <u><i>bitSecurityList.</i></u>g. <u><i>SessionkeyContext.</i></u>a. <u>[assignment: further subjects listed in FDP_ACC.1.1/SEF]</u>(2) <u>the objects</u><ul style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>with security attributes <i>seldentifier</i> of the current folder, <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> and <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> of the current Structured EF, and <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> of the record,</u>b. <u>[assignment: list of further objects listed in FDP_ACC.1.1/SEF]</u>⁸⁵
FDP_ACF.1.2/SEF	The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed: <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>The subject is allowed to execute the command listed in FDP_ACC.1.1/SEF for the record of the current Structured EF if the security attributes <i>interface</i>, <i>dfPasswordList</i>, <i>dfSecurityList</i></u>

⁸³ [assignment: list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP]

⁸⁴ [assignment: access control SFP]

⁸⁵ [assignment: rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects]

and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules of this object for this command dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules* of the current Structured EF, and *lifeCycleStatus* of the record.

(2) [assignment: *further list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*]⁸⁶.

FDP_ACF.1.3/SEF The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: none.⁸⁷.

FDP_ACF.1.4/SEF The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: Rules defined in FDP_ACF.1.4/EF apply, and [assignment: *additional rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects*]⁸⁸.

175 *Application note 25*: Keys can be TSF or user data. As SFR FDP_ACC.1/KEY and FDP_ACF.1/KEY address protection of user data the keys defined in these SFR as objects are user keys only. Keys used for authentication are TSF data and are therefore not in the scope of these two SFR. Please note that the PSO ENCIPHER, PSO DECIPHER, PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM, and PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM are used with the SK4TC for trusted channel. If these commands are used in the context trusted channel the key used is TSF data and not user data. Therefore the SFR FDP_ACC.1/KEY and FDP_ACF.1/KEY are not applicable on the commands used for trusted channel.

176 *Application note 26*: If the checksum of the record to be read by READ RECORD is malicious the TOE must append a warning when exporting. Exporting of malicious data should be taken into account by the evaluator during evaluation of class AVA: vulnerability assessment

177 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Subset access control (FDP_ACC.1/KEY)” as specified below.

FDP_ACC.1/KEY Subset access control

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.

FDP_ACC.1.1/KEY The TSF shall enforce the access control key SFP⁸⁹ on

(1) the subjects *logical channel* bind to users

- a. World,
- b. Human User
- c. Device
- d. Human User and Device,
- e. [assignment: *further subjects*]

(2) the objects

- a. symmetric key used for user data,
- b. private asymmetric key used for user data,
- c. public asymmetric key for signature verification used for

⁸⁶ [assignment: *list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*]

⁸⁷ [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects*]

⁸⁸ [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects*]

⁸⁹ [assignment: *access control SFP*]

- user data.
- d. public asymmetric key for encryption used for user data.
- e. ephemeral keys used during Diffie-Hellmann key exchange.
- f. [assignment: list of further objects]
- (3) the operation by command following
 - a. DELETE for private, public and symmetric key objects.
 - b. MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT.
 - c. GENERATE ASYMMETRIC KEY PAIR.
 - d. PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE.
 - e. PSO VERIFY DIGITAL SIGNATURE.
 - f. PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM.
 - g. PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM.
 - h. PSO ENCIPHER.
 - i. PSO DECIPHER.
 - j. PSO TRANSCIPHER.
 - k. [assignment: further operation]⁹⁰.

178 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Security attribute based access control (FDP_ACF.1/KEY)” as specified below.

FDP_ACF.1/KEY	Security attribute based access control
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation
FDP_ACF.1.1/KEY	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access control key SFP</u> ⁹¹ to objects based on the following <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>the subjects <i>logical channel</i> with security attributes</u><ul style="list-style-type: none">a. <u><i>interface</i>.</u>b. <u><i>globalPasswordList</i>.</u>c. <u><i>globalSecurityList</i>.</u>d. <u><i>dfPasswordList</i>.</u>e. <u><i>dfSecurityList</i>.</u>f. <u><i>bitSecurityList</i>.</u>g. <u><i>SessionkeyContext</i>.</u>h. <u>[assignment: further subjects listed in FDP_ACC.1.1/KEY]</u>(2) <u>the objects</u><ul style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>symmetric key used for user data with security attributes <i>seIdentifier</i> of the current folder, <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> and <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i>, the <i>key type</i> (encryption key or mac key), <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i> for session keys</u>b. <u>private asymmetric key used for user data with security attributes <i>seIdentifier</i> of the current folder, <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> and <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i>,</u>c. <u>public asymmetric key for signature verification used for user data with security attributes <i>seIdentifier</i> of the current folder, <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> and <i>interfaceDependentAccessRules</i>,</u>

⁹⁰ [assignment: list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP]

⁹¹ [assignment: access control SFP]

- d. public asymmetric key for encryption used for user data with security attributes *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*,
- e. ephemeral keys used during Diffie-Hellmann key exchange
- f. [assignment: *list of further objects listed in FDP_ACC.1.1/KEY*]⁹²

FDP_ACF.1.2/KEY

The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed:

- (1) MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT is [selection:ALWAYS allowed, [assignment: supported access control rules]] in cases defined in FDP_ACF.1.4/KEY.
- (2) A subject is allowed to DELETE an object listed in FDP_ACF.1.1/KEY if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command DELETE of this object dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*,
- (3) A subject is allowed to generate a new asymmetric key pair or change the content of existing objects if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command GENERATE ASYMMETRIC KEY PAIR of this object dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus*, the *key type* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (4) A subject is allowed to compute digital signatures using the private asymmetric key for user data if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE of this object dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus*, the *key type* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (5) A subject is allowed to verify digital signatures using the public asymmetric key for user data if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command PSO VERIFY DIGITAL SIGNATURE of this object dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus*, the *key type* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (6) A subject is allowed to compute a cryptographic checksum with a symmetric key used for user data if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM of this object dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus*, the *key type* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (7) A subject is allowed to verify a cryptographic checksum with a symmetric key used for user data if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext*

⁹² [assignment: *rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects*]

- of the subject meet the access rules for the command PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM of this object dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus*, the *key type* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (8) A subject is allowed encrypt user data using the asymmetric key if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command PSO ENCIIPHER of this object dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus*, the *key type* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (9) A subject is allowed decrypt user data using the asymmetric key if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command PSO DECIPHER of this object dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus*, the *key type* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (10) A subject is allowed decrypt and to encrypt user data using the asymmetric keys if the security attributes *interface*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the access rules for the command PSO TRANSCIPHER of both keys dependent on *seIdentifier* of the current folder, *lifeCycleStatus*, the *key type* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules*.
- (11) [assignment: further list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP]⁹³.

FDP_ACF.1.3/KEY The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: none.⁹⁴.

FDP_ACF.1.4/KEY The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules [assignment: *list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*].

179 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Specification of Management Functions (FMT_SMF.1)” as specified below.

FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions
Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: No dependencies.
FMT_SMF.1.1 The TSF shall be capable of performing the following management functions:
(1) Initialization,
(2) Personalization,
(3) Life Cycle Management by means of commands GENERATE ASYMMETRIC KEY PAIR, DELETE, LOAD APPLICATION, TERMINATE, TERMINATE DF, TERMINATE CARD USAGE,
[assignment: list of further management functions to be provided by the TSF]

⁹³ [assignment: *list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*]

⁹⁴ [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects*]

- (4) Management of access control security attributes by means of commands ACTIVATE, DEACTIVATE, ACTIVATE RECORD, DEACTIVATE RECORD, ENABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT, DISABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT,
- (5) Management of password objects attributes by means of commands CHANGE REFERENCE DATA, RESET RETRY COUNTER, GET PIN STATUS, VERIFY,
- (6) Management of device authentication reference data by means of commands PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE, GET SECURITY STATUS KEY
- (7) [assignment: list of further management functions to be provided by the TSF]⁹⁵

180 *Application note 27*: The protection profile BSI-PP-0035 [11] describes initialisation and personalisation as management functions. The ST author shall assign the COS commands dedicated for these management functions.

181 *Application note 28*: CREATE is an optional command. The ST writer should add it to the commands for the Life Cycle Management listed in FMT_SMF.1 and FMT_MSA.1/Life if implemented.

182 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Management of security attributes (FMT_MSA.1/Life)” as specified below.

FMT_MSA.1/Life	Management of security attributes
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control] FMT_SMR.1 Security roles FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions
FMT_MSA.1.1/Life	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access control MF DF SFP, access control EF SFP, access rule TEF SFP, access rule SEF SFP and access control key SFP⁹⁶</u> to restrict the ability to <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) <u>create⁹⁷ all security attributes of the new object DF, Application, Application dedicated file, EF, TEF and SEF⁹⁸ to subjects allowed execution of command LOAD APPLICATION for the MF, DF, Application, Application dedicated file where the new object is created⁹⁹,</u> (2) <u>change¹⁰⁰ the security attributes <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> to „Operational state (active)“¹⁰¹ to subjects allowed execution of command ACTIVATE for the selected object¹⁰²,</u>

⁹⁵ [assignment: list of management functions to be provided by the TSF]

⁹⁶ [assignment: access control SFP(s), information flow control SFP(s)]

⁹⁷ [selection: change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]]

⁹⁸ [assignment: list of security attributes]

⁹⁹ [assignment: the authorised identified roles]

¹⁰⁰ [selection: change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]]

¹⁰¹ [assignment: list of security attributes]

¹⁰² [assignment: the authorised identified roles]

- (3) **change¹⁰³ the security attributes *lifeCycleStatus* to „Operational state (deactivated)“¹⁰⁴ to subjects allowed execution of command DEACTIVATE for the selected object¹⁰⁵,**
- (4) **change¹⁰⁶ the security attributes *lifeCycleStatus* to „Termination state“¹⁰⁷ to subjects allowed execution of command TERMINATE for the selected EF, the key object or the password object¹⁰⁸,**
- (5) **change¹⁰⁹ the security attributes *lifeCycleStatus* to „Termination state“¹¹⁰ to subjects allowed execution of command TERMINATE DF for the selected DF, Application or Application File¹¹¹,**
- (6) **change¹¹² the security attributes *lifeCycleStatus* to „Termination state“¹¹³ to subjects allowed execution of command TERMINATE CARD USAGE¹¹⁴,**
- (7) **query¹¹⁵ the security attributes *lifeCycleStatus* to by means of command SELECT¹¹⁶ to [selection: ALWAYS allowed, [assignment: supported access control rules]]¹¹⁷,**
- (8) **delete¹¹⁸ all security attributes of the selected object¹¹⁹ to subjects allowed execution of command DELETE for the selected object¹²⁰ to [assignment: list of further security attributes with the authorised identified roles].**

The subject *logical channel* is allowed to execute a command if the security attributes *interface*, *globalPasswordList*, *globalSecurityList*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList*, *bitSecurityList* *SessionkeyContext* of

¹⁰³ [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹⁰⁴ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁰⁵ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁰⁶ [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹⁰⁷ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁰⁸ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁰⁹ [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹¹⁰ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹¹¹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹¹² [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹¹³ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹¹⁴ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹¹⁵ [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹¹⁶ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹¹⁷ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹¹⁸ [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹¹⁹ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹²⁰ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

the subject meet the security attributes *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules* of the affected object.

183 *Application note 29*: The refinements repeat the structure of the element in order to avoid iteration of the same SFR.

184 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Management of security attributes (FMT_MSA.1/SEF)” as specified below.

FMT_MSA.1/SEF	Management of security attributes
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control] FMT_SMR.1 Security roles FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions
FMT_MSA.1.1/SEF	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access control SEF SFP</u> ¹²¹ to restrict the ability to <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>change</u>¹²² the security attributes <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> of the selected record to „<i>Operational state (active)</i>“¹²³ to subjects allowed to execute the command <u>ACTIVATE RECORD</u>¹²⁴(2) <u>change</u>¹²⁵ the security attributes <i>lifeCycleStatus</i> of the selected record to „<i>Operational state (deactivated)</i>“¹²⁶ to subjects allowed to execute the command <u>DEACTIVATE RECORD</u>¹²⁷,(3) <u>delete</u>¹²⁸ all security attributes <u>of the selected record</u>¹²⁹ to subjects allowed to execute the command <u>ERASE RECORD</u>¹³⁰,(4) [<u>assignment: list of further security attributes with the authorised identified roles</u>].

The subject *logical channel* is allowed to execute a command if the security attributes *interface*, *globalPasswordList*, *globalSecurityList*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList*, *bitSecurityList* *SessionkeyContext* of the subject meet the security attributes *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules* of the affected object.

121 [assignment: *access control SFP(s)*, *information flow control SFP(s)*]

122 [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

123 [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

124 [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

125 [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

126 [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

127 [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

128 [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

129 [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

130 [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

185 *Application note 30*: The access rights can be described in FMT_MSA.1/SEF in more detail. The “*authorised identified roles*” could therefore be interpreted in a wider scope including the context where the command is allowed to be executed. The refinements repeat the structure of the element in order to avoid iteration of the same SFR.

186 THE TOE SHALL meet the requirement “Static attribute initialisation (FMT_MSA.3)” AS SPECIFIED BELOW.

FMT_MSA.3	Static attribute initialisation
HIERARCHICAL to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes FMT_SMR.1 Security roles
FMT_MSA.3.1	The TSF shall enforce the the <u>access control MF DF SFP, access control EF SFP, access rule TEF SFP, access rule SEF SFP and access control key SFP</u> ¹³¹ to provide <u>restrictive</u> ¹³² default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP. After reset the security attributes of the subject are set as follows (1) <i>currentFolder</i> is root, (2) <i>keyReferenceList, globalSecurityList, globalPasswordList, dfSpecificSecurityList, dfSpecificPasswordList and bitSecurityList</i> are empty, (3) <i>SessionkeyContext.flagSessionEnabled</i> is set to noSK, (4) <i>seIdentifier</i> is #1, (5) <i>currentFile</i> is undefined.
FMT_MSA.3.2	<i>The TSF shall allow the <u>subjects allowed to execute the command LOAD APPLICATION</u></i> ¹³³ to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

187 *Application note 31*: The refinements provide rules for setting restrictive security attributes after reset.

188 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Management of TSF data - PIN (FMT_MTD.1/PIN)” as specified below.

FMT_MTD.1/PIN	Management of TSF data - PIN
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions
FMT_MTD.1.1/PIN	The TSF shall restrict the ability to (1) <u>set new <i>secret</i> of the password objects by means of command CHANGE REFERENCE DATA with (CLA,INS,P1)=(00,24,00)</u> ^{134 135} to <u>subjects successful authenticated with the old <i>secret</i> of this</u>

¹³¹ [assignment: *access control SFP, information flow control SFP*]

¹³² [selection, choose one of: *restrictive, permissive, [assignment: other property]*]

¹³³ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹³⁴ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹³⁵ [assignment: *other operations*]

- password object¹³⁶,
- (2) **set new secret of the password objects by means of command CHANGE REFERENCE DATA with (CLA,INS,P1)=(00,24,01)**¹³⁷
¹³⁸ to **World**¹³⁹,
- (3) **set new secret of the password objects by means of command RESET RETRY COUNTER with (CLA,INS,P1)=(00,2C,00)**¹⁴⁰ ¹⁴¹
to **subjects successful authenticated with the PUC of this password object**¹⁴²
- (4) **set new secret of the password objects by means of command RESET RETRY COUNTER with (CLA,INS,P1)=(00,2C,02)**¹⁴³ ¹⁴⁴
to **World**¹⁴⁵.

189 *Application note 32*: The TOE provides access control to the commands depending on the object system. The refinements repeat the structure of the element in order to avoid iteration of the same SFR. The command RESET RETRY COUNTER with new password has (CLA,INS,P1)=(00,2C,00).

190 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Management of security attributes - PIN (FMT_MSA.1/PIN)” as specified below.

FMT_MSA.1/PIN	Management of security attributes - PIN
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control] FMT_SMR.1 Security roles FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions
FMT_MSA.1.1/PIN	The TSF shall enforce the the <u>access control MF_DF SFP, access control EF SFP, access rule TEF SFP, access rule SEF SFP and access control key SFP</u> ¹⁴⁶ to restrict the ability to (1) <u>reset by means of commands VERIFY</u> ¹⁴⁷ ¹⁴⁸ the security attribute <u>retry counter of password objects</u> ¹⁴⁹ to <u>subjects successful authenticated with the secret of this password object</u> ¹⁵⁰ ,

¹³⁶ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹³⁷ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹³⁸ [assignment: *other operations*]

¹³⁹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁴⁰ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁴¹ [assignment: *other operations*]

¹⁴² [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁴³ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁴⁴ [assignment: *other operations*]

¹⁴⁵ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁴⁶ [assignment: *access control SFP(s), information flow control SFP(s)*]

¹⁴⁷ [assignment: *other operations*]

¹⁴⁸ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁴⁹ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁵⁰ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

- (2) **reset by means of commands CHANGE REFERENCE DATA with (CLA,INS,P1)=(00,24,00)¹⁵¹ ¹⁵² the security attribute retry counter of password objects¹⁵³ to subjects successful authenticated with the old secret of this password object¹⁵⁴,**
- (3) **reset by means of command RESET RETRY COUNTER with (CLA,INS,P1)=(00,2C,01)¹⁵⁵ ¹⁵⁶ the security attribute retry counter of password objects¹⁵⁷ to subjects successful authenticated with the PUC of this password object¹⁵⁸,**
- (4) **reset by means of command RESET RETRY COUNTER with (CLA,INS,P1)=(00,2C,03)¹⁵⁹ ¹⁶⁰ the security attribute retry counter of password objects¹⁶¹ to World¹⁶²,**
- (5) **read by means of command GET PIN STATUS¹⁶³ ¹⁶⁴ the security attributes “enabled/disabled”, retry counter, transport protection of password objects¹⁶⁵ to World¹⁶⁶**
- (5) **enable¹⁶⁷ the security attributes requiring authentication with the selected password¹⁶⁸ to subjects allowed to execute the command ENABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT¹⁶⁹,**
- (6) **disable¹⁷⁰ the security attributes requiring authentication with the selected password¹⁷¹ to subjects allowed to execute the command DISABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT¹⁷².**

¹⁵¹ [assignment: *other operations*]

¹⁵² [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁵³ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁵⁴ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁵⁵ [assignment: *other operations*]

¹⁵⁶ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁵⁷ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁵⁸ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁵⁹ [assignment: *other operations*]

¹⁶⁰ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁶¹ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁶² [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁶³ [assignment: *other operations*]

¹⁶⁴ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁶⁵ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁶⁶ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁶⁷ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁶⁸ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁶⁹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁷⁰ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁷¹ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁷² [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

- 191 *Application note 33*: The TOE provides access control to the commands depending on the object system. The refinements repeat the structure of the element in order to avoid iteration of the same SFR. The command DISABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT can be used to disable the need to perform successful authentication via the selected password or Multi-Reference password, i.e. any authentication attempt will be successful. The command ENABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT can be used to enable the need to perform an authentication. The access rights to execute these commands can be limited to specific authenticated subjects. For example: the execution of DISABLE VERIFICATION REQUIREMENT should not be allowed for signing applications.
- 192 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Management of TSF data – Authentication data (FMT_MTD.1/Auth)” as specified below.

FMT_MTD.1/Auth Management of TSF data – Authentication data

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_SMR.1 Security roles
FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions

FMT_MTD.1.1/
Auth The TSF shall restrict the ability to

(1) import by means of commands LOAD APPLICATION¹⁷³ the root public keys to roles authorized to execute this command¹⁷⁴,

(2) import by means of commands PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE¹⁷⁵ the root public keys to roles authorized to execute this command¹⁷⁶,

(3) import by means of commands PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE¹⁷⁷ the certificates as device authentication reference data to roles authorized to execute this command¹⁷⁸,

(4) select by means of command MANAGE SECURITY ENVIRONMENT¹⁷⁹ the device authentication reference data to [selection: *World*, roles authorized to execute this command]¹⁸⁰.

The subject logical channel is allowed to execute a command if the security attributes *interface*, *globalPasswordList*, *globalSecurityList*, *dfPasswordList*, *dfSecurityList* and *bitSecurityList* SessionkeyContext of the subject meet the security attributes *lifeCycleStatus*, *seIdentifier* and *interfaceDependentAccessRules* of the affected object.

- 193 *Application note 34*: The TOE provides access control to the commands depending on the object system. The refinements repeat the structure of the element in order to avoid iteration of the same

¹⁷³ [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, *clear*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹⁷⁴ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁷⁵ [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, *clear*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹⁷⁶ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁷⁷ [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, *clear*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹⁷⁸ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁷⁹ [selection: *change_default*, *query*, *modify*, *delete*, *clear*, [assignment: *other operations*]]

¹⁸⁰ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

SFR. If root public keys are imported according to clause (2) this public key will be stored in the *persistentPublicKeyList* of the object system.

194 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Management of security attributes (FMT_MSA.1/Auth)” as specified below.

FMT_MSA.1/Auth	Management of security attributes
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control] FMT_SMR.1 Security roles FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions
FMT_MSA.1.1/ Auth	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access control key SFP</u> ¹⁸¹ to restrict the ability to <u>query</u> ¹⁸² ¹⁸³ the security attributes <u>access control rights set for the key</u> ¹⁸⁴ to <u>meet the access rules of command GET SECURITY STATUS KEY of the object dependent on lifeCycleStatus, selIdentifier and interfaceDependentAccessRules</u> ¹⁸⁵ .

195 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Management of TSF data – No export (FMT_MTD.1/NE)” as specified below.

FMT_MTD.1/NE	Management of TSF data – No export
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions
FMT_MTD.1.1/NE	The TSF shall restrict the ability to (1) <u>export TSF data according to FPT_ITE.2</u> ¹⁸⁶ the (a) <u>public authentication reference data,</u> (b) <u>security attributes for objects of the object system</u> (c) <u>[assignment: list of all TOE specific security attributes not described in COS specification [21]]</u> ¹⁸⁷ ¹⁸⁸ to <u>[assignment: list of security attributes of subjects]</u> ¹⁸⁹ (2) <u>export</u> ¹⁹⁰ <u>the following TSF-data</u> (a) <u>Password</u> (b) <u>Multi-Reference password</u> (c) <u>PUC</u>

¹⁸¹ [assignment: *access control SFP(s), information flow control SFP(s)*]

¹⁸² [assignment: *other operations*]

¹⁸³ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁸⁴ [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

¹⁸⁵ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁸⁶ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

¹⁸⁷ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁸⁸ [assignment: *other operations*]

¹⁸⁹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁹⁰ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

- (d) Private keys
- (e) Session keys
- (f) Symmetric authentication keys
- (g) Private authentication keys
- (h) [assignment: list of types of TSF data]
and the following user data
- (i) Private keys of the user
- (j) Symmetric keys of the user
- (k) [assignment: list of types of user data]¹⁹¹
to nobody¹⁹².

6.1.7 Cryptographic Functions

196 The TOE provides cryptographic services based on elliptic curve cryptography (ECC) using the following curves referred to as COS standard curves in the following

- (1) length 256 bit
 - (a) brainpoolP256r1 defined in RFC5639 [41],
 - (b) ansix9p256r1] defined in ANSI X.9.62 [42],
- (2) length 384
 - (a) brainpoolP384r1 defined in RFC5639 [41],
 - (b) ansix9p384r1 defined in ANSI X.9.62 [42],
- (3) length 512 bit
 - (a) brainpoolP512r1] defined in RFC5639 [41].

197 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Random number generation (FCS_RNG.1)” as specified below.

FCS_RNG.1	Random number generation
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FCS_RNG.1.1	The TSF shall provide a [selection: <u>deterministic, hybrid deterministic, physical, hybrid physical</u>] ¹⁹³ random number generator [selection: <i>DRG.3, DRG.4, PTG.2, PTG.3</i>] [7] that implements: [assignment: <i>list of security capabilities of the selected RNG class</i>].
FCS_RNG.1.2	The TSF shall provide random numbers that meet [assignment: <i># defined quality metric of the selected RNG class</i>] ¹⁹⁴ .

198 *Application note 35*: This SFR requires the TOE to generate random numbers used for key generation according to TR-03116 [19] section 3.5, requiring RNG classes identified in the selection in element FCS_RNG.1.1 and recommending RNG of class PTG.3. Note that the RNG

¹⁹¹ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

¹⁹² [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

¹⁹³ [selection: *physical, non-physical true, deterministic, hybrid*]

¹⁹⁴ [assignment: *a defined quality metric*]

of class DRG4 are hybrid deterministic and of class PTG3 are hybrid physical which are not addressed in BSI-CC-PP-0035. The implementation of the PACE protocol requires RNG of class PTG.3 (cf. [16]). The COS specification [21] requires to implement RNG for

- the command GET CHALLENGE,
- the command GET RANDOM¹⁹⁵,
- the authentication protocols as required by FIA_UAU.4,
- the key agreement for secure messaging

according to TR-03116 [19] section 3.4, which allows also for class DRG.2 RNG [7]. The selection in the element FCS_RNG.1.1 includes RNG of classes DRG.3 and DRG.4 hierarchically to DRG.2. If the TOE implements RNG of class DRG.2 the ST author shall iterate the component FCS_RNG.1 and indicate the usage of this deterministic RNG. The quality metric assigned in element FCS_RNG.1.2 shall be chosen to resist attacks with high attack potential.

199 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation - SHA (FCS_COP.1/SHA)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/SHA	Cryptographic operation - SHA
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/SHA	The TSF shall perform <u>hashing</u> ¹⁹⁶ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) <u>SHA-1</u>, (2) <u>SHA-256</u>, (3) <u>SHA-384</u>, (4) <u>SHA-512</u>¹⁹⁷ and cryptographic key sizes <u>none</u> ¹⁹⁸ that meet the following <u>TR-03116 [19], FIPS 180-4[37]</u> ¹⁹⁹ .

200 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic key generation – 3TDES_SM (FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM)” as specified below.

FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM	Cryptographic key generation – 3TDES_SM
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.
FCS_CKM.1.1/	The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm <u>Key Derivation</u>

¹⁹⁵ cf. package Crypto box

¹⁹⁶ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

¹⁹⁷ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

¹⁹⁸ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

¹⁹⁹ [assignment: *list of standards*]

3TDES_SM Function specified in sec. 5.6.3 in ANSI X9.63²⁰⁰ and specified cryptographic key sizes 192 bit (168 bit effectively)²⁰¹ that meet the following: ANSI X9.63 [40]²⁰².

201 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation - COS for 3TDES (FCS_COP.1/COS.3TDES)” as specified below.

**FCS_COP.1/
COS.3TDES** Cryptographic operation - COS for 3TDES

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or
FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or
FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

FCS_COP.1.1/
COS.3TDES The TSF shall perform decryption and encryption for secure messaging²⁰³ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm 3TDES in CBC mode²⁰⁴ and cryptographic key sizes 192 bit (168 bit effectively)²⁰⁵ that meet the following TR-03116 [19], NIST SP 800-67 [38]²⁰⁶.

202 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation COS for RMAC (FCS_COP.1/COS.RMAC)” as specified below.

**FCS_COP.1/
COS.RMAC** Cryptographic operation COS for RMAC

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or
FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or
FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

FCS_COP.1.1/
COS.RMAC The TSF shall perform
(1) verification of cryptographic checksum for command PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM
(2) computation and verification of cryptographic checksum for secure messaging²⁰⁷
in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm Retail MAC²⁰⁸ and cryptographic key sizes 192 bit (168 bit effectively)²⁰⁹ that meet the following TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21]²¹⁰.

²⁰⁰ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

²⁰¹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁰² [assignment: *list of standards*]

²⁰³ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁰⁴ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁰⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁰⁶ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²⁰⁷ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁰⁸ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

203 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – COS for AES (FCS_COP.1/COS.AES)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/ COS.AES	Cryptographic operation – COS for AES
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/ COS.AES	The TSF shall perform <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. <u>decryption with card internal key for command GENERAL AUTHENTICATE</u>2. <u>decryption and encryption for secure messaging</u>²¹¹ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm <u>AES in CBC mode</u>²¹² and cryptographic key sizes <u>128 bit, 192 bit, 256 bit</u>²¹³ that meet the following: <u>TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21], FIPS 197 [33]</u>²¹⁴.

204 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic key generation – COS for SM keys (FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM)” as specified below.

FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM	Cryptographic key generation – COS for SM keys
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.
FCS_CKM.1.1/ AES.SM	The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm <u>Key Derivation for AES as specified in sec. 4.4.3 in [17]</u> ²¹⁵ and specified cryptographic key sizes <u>128 bit, 192 bit, 256 bit</u> ²¹⁶ that meet the following <u>TR-03111 [17], COS specification [21], FIPS 197 [33]</u> ²¹⁷ .

205 *Application note 36:* The Key Generation FCS_CKM.1/AES.SM is done during MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE, EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE, INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE or GENERAL AUTHENTICATE with establishment of secure messaging (with option crypto box also for trusted channel). The Authentication Protocols produce agreed parameters to generate the encryption key and the message authentication keys for secure messaging. The algorithm uses random numbers

²⁰⁹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²¹⁰ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²¹¹ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²¹² [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²¹³ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²¹⁴ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²¹⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

²¹⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²¹⁷ [assignment: *list of standards*]

generated by the TSF as required by FCS_RNG.1 or RNG of class DRG.2 (cf. Application note 35).

206 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – COS for CMAC (FCS_COP.1/COS.CMAC)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/ COS.CMAC	Cryptographic operation – COS for CMAC
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/ COS.CMAC	The TSF shall perform (1) <u>computation and verification of cryptographic checksum for command</u> a. <u>PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM</u> b. <u>PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM</u> (2) <u>computation and verification of cryptographic checksum for secure messaging</u> ²¹⁸ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm <u>CMAC</u> ²¹⁹ and cryptographic key sizes <u>128 bit, 192 bit, and 256 bit</u> ²²⁰ that meet the following <u>TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21], NIST SP 800-38B [36]</u> ²²¹ .

207 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic key generation – RSA key generation (FCS_CKM.1/RSA)” as specified below.

FCS_CKM.1/RSA	Cryptographic key generation – RSA key generation
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.
FCS_CKM.1.1/RSA	The TSF shall generate cryptographic RSA keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm [assignment: <i>cryptographic key generation algorithm</i>] ²²² and specified cryptographic key <u>2048 bit and 3072 bit modulo length</u> ²²³ that meet the following <u>TR-03116 [19]</u> ²²⁴ .

208 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic key generation – ECC key generation (FCS_CKM.1/ELC)” as specified below.

²¹⁸ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²¹⁹ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²²⁰ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²²¹ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²²² [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

²²³ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²²⁴ [assignment: *list of standards*]

FCS_CKM.1/ELC	Cryptographic key generation – ECC key generation
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.
FCS_CKM.1.1/ELC	The TSF shall generate cryptographic ELC keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm [assignment: <i>cryptographic key generation algorithm</i>] with COS standard curves ²²⁵ and specified cryptographic key <u>256 bit, 384 bit and 512 bit</u> ²²⁶ that meet the following <u>TR-03111 [17], COS specification [21]</u> ²²⁷ .

209 *Application note 37*: The COS specification [21] requires the TOE to support elliptic curves listed in COS specification [21], chapter 6.5 (referred as COS standard curves in this PP) and to implement the command GENERATE ASYMMETRIC KEY PAIR. Depending on the characteristic needs of the TOE should support the generation of asymmetric key pairs for the following operations:

- qualified electronic signatures,
- authentication of external entities,
- document cipher key decipherment.

The ST writer shall perform the missing operations in the element FCS_CKM.1/RSA and FCS_CKM.1/ELC according to the implemented key generation algorithms.

210 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – RSA signature-creation (FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S	Cryptographic operation – RSA signature-creation
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1 /COS.RSA.S	The TSF shall perform <u>digital signature generation for commands</u> (1) <u>PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE</u> , (2) <u>INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE</u> ²²⁸ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm (3) <u>RSASSA-PSS-SIGN with SHA-256</u> , (4) <u>RSA SSA PKCS1-V1_5</u> , (5) <u>RSA ISO9796-2 DS1 with SHA-256 (for INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE only)</u> , (6) <u>RSA ISO9796-2 DS2 with SHA-256 (for PSO Compute DIGITAL SIGNATURE only)</u> ²²⁹ , and cryptographic key sizes

²²⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

²²⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²²⁷ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²²⁸ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²²⁹ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

(7) 2048 bit modulo length,
(8) 3072 bit modulo length²³⁰
that meet the following: TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21], [31], [34]²³¹.

211 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – RSA signature verification (FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.V)” as specified below.

**FCS_COP.1/
COS.RSA.V** Cryptographic operation – RSA signature verification

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or
FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or
FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

FCS_COP.1.1/
COS.RSA.V The TSF shall perform digital signature verification for import of RSA keys using the commands
(1) PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE,
(2) EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE²³²
in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm RSA ISO9796-2 DS1²³³ and cryptographic key sizes 2048 bit and 3072 bit modulo length²³⁴ that meet the following: TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21], [34], [31]²³⁵.

212 *Application note 38*: The command PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE may store the imported public keys for RSA and ELC temporarily in the *PublicKeyList* or permanently in the *persistantPublicKeyList*. These keys may be used as authentication reference data for asymmetric key based device authentication (cf. FIA_UAU.5) or user data.

213 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – ECDSA signature verification (FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.V)” as specified below.

**FCS_COP.1/
COS.ECDSA.V** Cryptographic operation – ECDSA signature verification

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or
FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or
FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

FCS_COP.1.1/
COS.ECDSA.V The TSF shall perform digital signature verification for import of ELC keys for the commands
(1) PSO VERIFY CERTIFICATE,
(2) PSO VERIFY DIGITAL SIGNATURE.

²³⁰ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²³¹ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²³² [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²³³ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²³⁴ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²³⁵ [assignment: *list of standards*]

(3) EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE²³⁶
in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm ECDSA with COS standard curves using
(1) SHA-256,
(2) SHA-384,
(3) SHA-512²³⁷
and cryptographic key sizes 256 bits, 384 bits, 512 bits²³⁸ that meet the following TR-03116 [19], TR-03111 [17], COS specification [21], [40]²³⁹.

214 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – ECDSA signature-creation (FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S	Cryptographic operation – ECDSA signature-creation
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/ COS.ECDSA.S	The TSF shall perform <u>digital signature generation for command</u> (1) <u>PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE</u> , (2) <u>INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE</u> ²⁴⁰ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm <u>ECDSA with COS standard curves using</u> (1) <u>SHA-256</u> , (2) <u>SHA-384</u> , (3) <u>SHA-512</u> ²⁴¹ and cryptographic key sizes <u>256 bits, 384 bits, 512 bits</u> ²⁴² that meet the following <u>TR-03116 [19], TR-03111 [17], COS specification [21], [40]</u> ²⁴³ .

215 *Application note 39*: The TOE shall support two variants of the PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE.

- PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE without Message Recovery shall be used for the signing algorithms
 - RSASSA-PSS-SIGN with SHA-256 (see FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S),
 - RSA SSA PKCS1-V1_5, RSA (see FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S),
 - ECDSA with SHA-256, SHA-384 and SHA-512 (see FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S)

²³⁶ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²³⁷ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²³⁸ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²³⁹ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²⁴⁰ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁴¹ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁴² [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁴³ [assignment: *list of standards*]

- PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE with Message Recovery shall be used for the for the following signing algorithm
 - RSA ISO9796-2 DS2 with SHA-256 (see FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S)

216 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – RSA encryption and (FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA	Cryptographic operation – RSA encryption and decryption
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/ COS.RSA	The TSF shall perform <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>encryption with passed key for command PSO ENCIIPHER,</u>(2) <u>decryption with stored key for command PSO DECIIPHER,</u>(3) <u>decryption and encryption for command PSO TRANSCIPHER using RSA (transcipher of data using RSA keys),</u>(4) <u>decryption for command PSO TRANSCIPHER using RSA (transcipher of data from RSA to ELC),</u>(5) <u>encryption for command PSO TRANSCIPHER using ELC (transcipher of data from ELC to RSA)</u>²⁴⁴ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm <ol style="list-style-type: none">(6) <u>for encryption:</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>RSAES-PKCS1-v1_5 Encrypt ([34] section 7.2.1),</u>b. <u>RSA-OAEP-Encrypt ([34] section 7.1.1),</u>(7) <u>for decryption:</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>RSAES-PKCS1-v1_5 Decrypt ([34] section 7.2.2),</u>b. <u>RSA-OAEP-Decrypt ([34] section 7.1.2)</u>²⁴⁵ and cryptographic key sizes <u>2048 bit and 3072 bit modulo length for RSA and 256 bit, 384 bit and 512 bit for the COS standard curves</u> ²⁴⁶ that meet the following <u>TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21], [34]</u> ²⁴⁷ .

217 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – ECC encryption and decryption (FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC	Cryptographic operation – ECC encryption and decryption
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/	The TSF shall perform

²⁴⁴ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁴⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁴⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁴⁷ [assignment: *list of standards*]

- COS.ELC
- (1) encryption with passed key for command PSO ENCIIPHER,
 - (2) decryption with stored key for command PSO DECIPHER,
 - (3) decryption and encryption for command PSO TRANSCIPHER using ELC (transcipher of data using ELC keys),
 - (4) decryption for command PSO TRANSCIPHER using ELC (transcipher of data from ELC to RSA),
 - (5) encryption for command PSO TRANSCIPHER using ELC (transcipher of data from RSA to ELC)²⁴⁸
- in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm
- (1) for encryption ELC encryption,
 - (2) for decryption ELC decryption²⁴⁹
- and cryptographic key sizes 2048 bit and 3072 bit modulo length for RSA and 256 bits, 384 bits, 512 bits for ELC keys with COS standard curves²⁵⁰ that meet the following [17], [19], and [21]²⁵¹.

218 *Application note 40:* The TOE can support or reject the command PSO HASH (following standard [30]) and ENVELOPE (following standard [29]). If the command is supported the ST writer is asked to add a SFR FCS_COP.1/CB_HASH specifying the supported hash algorithms.

219 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic key destruction (FCS_CKM.4)” as specified below.

FCS_CKM.4	Cryptographic key destruction
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
FCS_CKM.4.1	The TSF shall destroy cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key destruction method [assignment: <i>cryptographic key destruction method</i>] that meets the following: [assignment: <i>list of standards</i>].

220 *Application note 41:* The TOE shall destroy the encryption session keys and the message authentication keys for secure messaging after reset or termination of secure messaging session (trusted channel) or reaching fail secure state according to FPT_FLS.1. The TOE shall clear the memory area of any session keys before starting a new communication with an external entity in a new after-reset-session as required by FDP_RIP.1. Explicit deletion of a secret using the DELETE command should also be taken into account by the ST writer.

6.1.8 Protection of communication

221 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Inter-TSF trusted channel (FTP_ITC.1/TC)” as specified below.

²⁴⁸ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁴⁹ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁵⁰ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁵¹ [assignment: *list of standards*]

FTP_ITC.1/TC	Inter-TSF trusted channel
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FTP_ITC.1.1/TC	The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from modification or disclosure.
FTP_ITC.1.2/TC	The TSF shall permit <u>another trusted IT product</u> ²⁵² to initiate communication via the trusted channel.
FTP_ITC.1.3/TC	The TSF shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for <u>none</u> ²⁵³ .

222 *Application note 42*: The TOE responds only to commands establishing secure messaging channels.

6.2 Security Assurance Requirements for the TOE

223 The Security Target to be developed based upon this Protection Profile will be evaluated according to

Security Target evaluation (Class ASE)

224 Security Assurance Requirements for the TOE for the evaluation of the TOE are those taken from the Evaluation

Assurance Level 4 (EAL4)

225 and augmented by taking the following components:

ALC_DVS.2 (Development security)

ATE_DPT.2 (Test depth)

AVA_VAN.5 (Advanced methodical vulnerability analysis).

226 The assurance requirements are:

Class ADV: Development

Architectural design (ADV_ARC.1)

Functional specification (ADV_FSP.4)

Implementation representation (ADV_IMP.1)

TOE design (ADV_TDS.3)

Class AGD: Guidance documents

²⁵² [selection: *the TSF, another trusted IT product*]

²⁵³ [assignment: *list of functions for which a trusted channel is required*]

Operational user guidance	(AGD_OPE.1)
Preparative user guidance	(AGD_PRE.1)
Class ALC: Life-cycle support	
CM capabilities	(ALC_CMC.4)
CM scope	(ALC_CMS.4)
Delivery	(ALC_DEL.1)
Development security	(ALC_DVS.2)
Life-cycle definition	(ALC_LCD.1)
Tools and techniques	(ALC_TAT.1)
Class ASE: Security Target evaluation	
Conformance claims	(ASE_CCL.1)
Extended components definition	(ASE_ECD.1)
ST introduction	(ASE_INT.1)
Security objectives	(ASE_OBJ.2)
Derived security requirements	(ASE_REQ.2)
Security problem definition	(ASE_SPD.1)
TOE summary specification	(ASE_TSS.1)
Class ATE: Tests	
Coverage	(ATE_COV.2)
Depth	(ATE_DPT.2)
Functional tests	(ATE_FUN.1)
Independent testing	(ATE_IND.2)
Class AVA: Vulnerability assessment	
Vulnerability analysis	(AVA_VAN.5)

Table 21: Assurance components

6.2.1 Refinements of the TOE Assurance Requirements

- 227 In the BSI-PP-0035 [11] refinements of the TOE assurance requirements were performed. This Protection Profile takes over the refinements for the SFR listed in section 6.1.3 “Security Functional Requirements for the TOE taken over from BSI-PP-0035”. The refinements must be applied for the SFR listed in section 6.1.3 (see Table 20). The refinements and the section where the refinement in BSI-PP-0035 [11] is specified are listed in Table 22 . The ST writer is asked to refer the corresponding sections of the BSI-PP-0035 [11] (see Table 22).
- 228 For all other Security Functional Requirements the TOE assurance requirements from Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 3: Security assurance components; CCMB-2012-09-003, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012 [3] should be used. Note that it is possible to use the TOE assurance requirements as defined in BSI-PP-0035 [11] (see Table 22)

for all SFR in this Protection Profile. According to Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 1: Introduction and General Model; CCMB-2012-09-001, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012 [1] for that choice a justification of why the preferred option was not chosen is required.

Refinements regarding	Reference to [11]
Delivery procedure (ALC_DEL)	Section 6.2.1.1 “Refinements regarding Delivery procedure (ALC_DEL)”
Development Security (ALC_DVS)	Section 6.2.1.2 “Refinements regarding Development Security (ALC_DVS)”
CM scope (ALC_CMS)	Section 6.2.1.3 “Refinements regarding CM scope (ALC_CMS)”
CM capabilities (ALC_CMC)	Section 6.2.1.4 “Refinements regarding CM capabilities (ALC_CMC)”
Security Architecture (ADV_ARC)	Section 6.2.1.5 “Refinements regarding Security Architecture (ADV_ARC)”
Functional Specification (ADV_FSP)	Section 6.2.1.6 “Refinements regarding Functional Specification (ADV_FSP)”
Implementation Representation (ADV_IMP)	Section 6.2.1.7 “Refinements regarding Implementation Representation (ADV_IMP)”
Test Coverage (ATE_COV)	Section 6.2.1.8” Refinements regarding Test Coverage (ATE_COV)”
User Guidance (AGD_OPE)	Section 6.2.1.9 “Refinements regarding User Guidance (AGD_OPE)”
Preparative User Guidance (AGD_PRE)	Section 6.2.1.10 “Refinements regarding Preparative User Guidance (AGD_PRE)”
Refinement regarding Vulnerability Analysis (AVA_VAN)	Section 6.2.1 “Refinement regarding Vulnerability Analysis (AVA_VAN)”

Table 22: Refined TOE assurance requirements

229 The following sections define refinements and application notes to the chosen SAR.

6.2.2 Refinements to ADV_ARC.1 Security architecture description

230 The ADV_ARC.1 Security architecture description requires as developer action

ADV_ARC.1.1D The developer shall design and implement the TOE so that the security features of the TSF cannot be bypassed.

and the related content and presentation element

ADV_ARC.1.5C The security architecture description shall demonstrate that the TSF prevents bypass of the SFR-enforcing functionality.

231 The COS specification [21] allows implementation of optional features and commands. The following refinement for ADV_ARC.1.5C defines specific evidence required for these optional features and commands if implemented by the TOE and not being part of the TSF.

Refinement: If a feature or command identified as optional in the COS specification is implemented in the TOE or any other additional functionality of the TOE is not part of the TSF the security architecture description shall demonstrate that it do not bypass the SFR-enforcing functionality.

6.2.3 Refinements to ADV_FSP.4 Complete functional specification

232 The following content and presentation element of ADV_FSP.4 Complete functional specification is refined as follows:

ADV_FSP.4.2C The functional specification shall describe the purpose and method of use for all TSFI.

Refinement: The functional specification shall describe the purpose and method of use for all TSFI **including**

- (1) **the physical and logical interface of the smart card platform, both contact based and contactless as implemented by the TOE,**
- (2) **the logical interface of the wrapper to the verification tool.**

233 *Application note 43:* The IC surface as external interface of the TOE provides the TSFI for physical protection (cf. FPT_PHP.3) and evaluated in the IC evaluation as base evaluation for the composite evaluation of the composite TOE (cf. [9], chapter 2.5.2, for details). This interface is also analysed as attack surface in the vulnerability analysis e.g. in respect to perturbation and emanation side channel analysis.

6.2.4 Refinement to ADV_IMP.1

234 The following content and presentation element of ADV_IMP.1 Implementation representation of the TSF is refined as follows:

ADV_IMP.1.1D The developer shall make available the implementation representation for the entire TOE.

235 *Application note 44:* The refinement extends the TSF implementation representation to the TOE implementation representation, i.e. the complete executable code implemented on the Security platform IC including all IC Embedded Software and especially the Card Operating System, (COS).

6.2.5 Refinements to AGD_OPE.1 Operational user guidance

236 The following content and presentation element of AGD_OPE.1 Operational user guidance is refined as follows:

AGD_OPE.1.2C The operational user guidance shall describe, for each user role, how to use the available interfaces provided by the TOE in a secure manner.

Refinement: The operational user guidance shall describe the method of use of the wrapper interface.

237 *Application note 45:* The wrapper will be used to interact with the smartcard for export of all public TSF data of all objects in an object system according to “Export of TSF data (FPT_ITE.2)”. Because the COS specification [21] identifies optional functionality the TOE may support the guidance documentation shall describe method of use of the TOE (as COS, wrapper) to find all objects in the object system and to export all security attributes of these objects.

6.2.6 Refinements to ATE_FUN.1 Functional tests

238 The following content and presentation element of ATE_FUN.1 Functional tests is refined as follows:

ATE_FUN.1.1C The test documentation shall consist of test plans, expected test results and actual test results.

Refinement: The test plan shall include typical uses cases for the application eHC [22], eHPC [23], SMC-B [24], SMC-K [25] and SMC-KT [26].

239 *Application note 46:* The developer should agree the typical uses cases with the evaluation laboratory and the certification body in order to define an effective test approach and to use synergy for appropriate test effort. The agreed test cases support comparable test effort for TOE under evaluation.

6.2.7 Refinements to ATE_IND.2 Independent testing – sample

240 The following content and presentation element of ATE_IND.2 Functional tests is refined as follows:

ATE_IND.2.3E The evaluator shall test a subset of the TSF to confirm that the TSF operates as specified.

Refinement: The evaluator tests shall include typical uses cases for the application eHC [22], eHPC [23], SMC-B [24], SMC-K [25] and SMC-KT [26].

241 *Application note 47:* The evaluator should agree the typical uses cases with the certification body in order to define an effective test approach and to use synergy for appropriate test effort. The agreed test cases support comparable test effort for TOE under evaluation.

6.3 Security Requirements Rationale

242 This chapter comprises three parts:

- The SFR rationale provided by a table showing the coverage of security objective of the TOE by security functional requirements, already provided in the current version of this PP, and rationale explanatory text which will be provided in future versions of this PP
- The SFR dependency rationale missing in the current version and to be provided in future versions of this PP
- The SAR rationale provided in section 6.3.3.

6.3.1 Security Functional Requirements Rationale

243 Table 2 in section 6.3.1 “Security Functional Requirements Rational” in BSI-PP-0035 [11] gives an overview, how the security functional requirements taken over are combined to meet the security objectives. Please refer that table and the text following after that table justifying this in detail for the further details.

244 The following table provides an overview for security functional requirements coverage also giving an evidence for *sufficiency* and *necessity* of the SFRs chosen.

	O.Identification	O.Leak-Inherent	O.Phys-Probing	O.Malfunction	O.Phys-Manipulation	O.Leak-Forced	O.Abuse-Func	O.RND
FAU_SAS.1/SICP	X							
FCS_RNG.1/SICP								X
FDP_IFC.1/SICP		X				X		
FDP_ITT.1/SICP		X				X		
FMT_LIM.1/SICP							X	
FMT_LIM.2/SICP							X	
FPT_FLS.1/SICP				X				
FPT_ITT.1/SICP		X				X		
FPT_PHP.3/SICP			X		X			
FRU_FLT.2/SICP				X				

Table 23: Coverage of Security Objectives for the TOE IC part by SFR

245 As stated in section 2.4, this PP claims conformance to BSI-PP-0035 [11]. The objectives and SFRs as used in Table 23 are defined and handled in [11]. Hence, the rationale for these items and their correlation from Table 23 is given in [11] and not repeated here.

	O.Integrity	O.Confidentiality	O.Resp-COS	O.TSFDataExport	O.Authentication	O.AccessControl	O.KeyManagement	O.Crypto	O.SecureMessaging
FDP_RIP.1		X							
FPT_FLS.1	X	X							
FPT_EMS.1		X							
FPT_TDC.1				X					
FPT_ITE.1				X					
FPT_ITE.2				X					

	O.Integrity	O.Confidentiality	O.Resp-COS	O.TSFDataExport	O.Authentication	O.AccessControl	O.KeyManagement	O.Crypto	O.SecureMessaging
FPT_TST.1	X	X	X						
FIA_AFL.1/PIN					X				
FIA_AFL.1/PUC					X				
FIA_ATD.1					X				
FIA_UAU.1					X				
FIA_UAU.4					X				
FIA_UAU.5					X				
FIA_UAU.6					X				
FIA_UID.1					X				
FIA_API.1					X				
FMT_SMR.1					X	X			
FIA_USB.1					X	X			
FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF						X			
FDP_ACF.1/ MF_DF						X			
FDP_ACC.1/EF						X			
FDP_ACF.1/EF						X			
FDP_ACC.1/TEF						X			
FDP_ACF.1/TEF						X			
FDP_ACC.1/SEF						X			
FDP_ACF.1/SEF						X			
FDP_ACC.1/KEY						X	X		
FDP_ACF.1/KEY						X	X		
FMT_MSA.3						X			
FMT_SMF.1						X			
FMT_MSA.1/Life					X	X	X		
FMT_MSA.1/SEF						X			
FMT_MTD.1/PIN					X	X			
FMT_MSA.1/PIN					X	X			
FMT_MTD.1/Auth					X	X			
FMT_MSA.1/Auth					X	X			
FMT_MTD.1/NE		X				X			
FCS_RNG.1							X	X	
FCS_COP.1/SHA								X	
FCS_COP.1/ COS.3TDES								X	X

	O.Integrity	O.Confidentiality	O.Resp-COS	O.TSFDataExport	O.Authentication	O.AccessControl	O.KeyManagement	O.Crypto	O.SecureMessaging
FCS_COP.1/ COS.AES								X	X
FCS_COP.1/ COS.RMAC								X	X
FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES.SM							X	X	X
FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM							X	X	
FCS_CKM.1/RSA							X	X	
FCS_CKM.1/ELC							X	X	
FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE							X	X	
FCS_COP.1/ COS.CMAC								X	
FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S								X	
FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.V								X	
FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S								X	
FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.V								X	
FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA								X	
FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC								X	
FCS_CKM.4							X		
FTP_ITC.1/TC									X

Table 24: Mapping between security objectives for the TOE and SFR

- 246 A detailed justification required for *suitability* of the security functional requirements to achieve the security objectives is given below.
- 247 The security objective **O.Integrity** “Integrity of internal data” requires the protection of the integrity of user data, TSF data and security services. This objective is addressed by the SFRs FPT_FLS.1 and FPT_TST.1: FPT_TST.1 requires self tests to demonstrate the correct operation of the TSF and its protection capabilities. In case of failures, FPT_FLS.1 requires the preservation of a secure state in order to protect the user data, TSF data and security services.
- 248 The security objective **O.Confidentiality** “Confidentiality of internal data” requires the protection of the confidentiality of sensitive user data and TSF data. This objective is addressed by the SFRs FDP_RIP.1, FPT_FLS.1, FPT_EMS.1, FPT_TST.1 and FMT_MTD.1/NE: FMT_MTD.1/NE restricts the ability to export sensitive TSF data to dedicated roles, some sensitive user data like private authentication keys are not allowed to be exported at all. FPT_EMS.1 requires that the TOE does not emit any information of sensitive user data and TSF data by emissions and via circuit interfaces. Further, FDP_RIP.1 requires that residual information regarding sensitive data in previously used resources will not be available after its usage. FPT_TST.1 requires self tests to demonstrate the correct operation of the TSF and its confidentiality protection capabilities. In case of failures, FPT_FLS.1 requires the preservation of a secure state in order to protect the user data, TSF data and security services.

- 249 The security objective **O.Resp-COS** “Treatment of User and TSF Data” requires the correct treatment of the user data and TSF data as defined by the TSF data of the object system. This correct treatment is ensured by appropriate self tests of the TSF. FPT_TST.1 requires self tests to demonstrate the correct operation of the TSF and its data treatment.
- 250 The security objective **O.TSFDataExport** “Support of TSF data export” requires the correct export of TSF data of the object system excluding confidential TSF data. This objective is addressed by the SFRs FPT_TDC.1, FPT_ITE.1 and FPT_ITE.2: FPT_ITE.2 requires the export of dedicated TSF data but restricts the kind of TSF data that can be exported. Hence, confidential data shall not be exported. Also, the TSF is required to be able to export the fingerprint of TOE implementation by the SFR FPT_ITE.1. For Card Verifiable Certificates (CVC), the SFR FPT_TDC.1 requires the consistent interpretation when shared between the TSF and another trusted IT product.
- 251 The security objective **O.Authentication** “Authentication of external entities” requires the support of authentication of human users and external devices as well as the ability of the TSF to authenticate itself. This objective is addressed by the following SFRs:
- FIA_AFL.1/PIN requires that the TSF detects repeated unsuccessful authentication attempts and blocks the password authentication when the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts reaches a defined number.
 - FIA_AFL.1/PUC requires that the TSF detects repeated unsuccessful authentication attempts for the password unblocking function and performs appropriate actions when the number of unsuccessful authentication attempts reaches a defined number.
 - FIA_ATD.1 requires that the TSF maintains dedicated security attributes belonging to individual users.
 - FIA_UAU.1 requires the processing of dedicated actions before a user is authenticated. Any other actions shall require user authentication.
 - FIA_UAU.4 requires the prevention of reuse of authentication data.
 - FIA_UAU.5 requires the TSF to support user authentication by providing dedicated commands. Multiple authentication mechanisms like password based and key based authentication are required.
 - FIA_UAU.6 requires the TSF to support re-authentication of message senders using a secure messaging channel.
 - FIA_UID.1 requires the processing of dedicated actions before a user is identified. Any other actions shall require user identification.
 - FIA_API.1 requires that the TSF provides dedicated commands to prove the identity of the TSF itself.
 - FMT_SMR.1 requires that the TSF maintains roles and associates users with roles.
 - FIA_USB.1 requires that the TSF associates dedicated security attributes with subjects acting on behalf of that user. Also, the TSF shall enforce rules governing changes of these security attributes by the implementation of commands that perform these changes.
 - FMT_MTD.1/PIN requires that the TSF restricts the ability to change password objects by the implementation of dedicated commands and management functions.
 - FMT_MSA.1/PIN requires that the TSF enforces the access control policy to restrict the ability to change, enable and disable and optionally perform further operations of security attributes for password objects. For that purpose the SFR requires management functions to implement these operations.

- FMT_MTD.1/Auth requires that the TSF restricts the ability to import device authentication reference data by the implementation of dedicated commands and management functions.
- FMT_MSA.1/Auth requires that the TSF enforces the access control policy to restrict the ability to read security attributes for the device authentication reference data. For that purpose the SFR requires management functions to implement this operation.

252 The security objective **O.AccessControl** “Access Control for Objects” requires the enforcement of an access control policy to restricted objects and devices. Further, the management functionality for the access policy is required. This objective is addressed by the following SFRs:

- FMT_SMR.1 requires that the TSF maintains roles and associates users with roles.
- FIA_USB.1 requires that the TSF associates dedicated security attributes with subjects acting on behalf of that user. Also, the TSF shall enforce rules governing changes of these security attributes by the implementation of commands that perform these changes.
- FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF requires that the TSF enforces an access control policy to restrict operations on MF and folders objects as well as applications performed by subjects of the TOE.
- FDP_ACF.1/
MF_DF requires that the TSF enforce an access control policy to restrict operations on MF and folders objects as well as applications based on a set of rules defined in the SFR. Also, the TSF is required to deny access to the MF object in case of “Termination state” of the TOE life cycle.
- FDP_ACC.1/EF requires that the TSF enforces an access control policy to restrict operations on EF objects performed by subjects of the TOE.
- FDP_ACF.1/EF requires that the TSF enforce an access control policy to restrict operations on EF objects based on a set of rules defined in the SFR. Also, the TSF is required to deny access to EF objects in case of “Termination state” of the TOE life cycle.
- FDP_ACC.1/TEF requires that the TSF enforces an access control policy to restrict operations on transparent EF objects performed by subjects of the TOE.
- FDP_ACF.1/TEF requires that the TSF enforce an access control policy to restrict operations on transparent EF objects based on a set of rules defined in the SFR. Also, the TSF is required to deny access to transparent EF objects in case of “Termination state” of the TOE life cycle.
- FDP_ACC.1/SEF requires that the TSF enforces an access control policy to restrict operations on structured EF objects performed by subjects of the TOE.
- FDP_ACF.1/SEF requires that the TSF enforce an access control policy to restrict operations on structured EF objects based on a set of rules defined in the SFR. Also, the TSF is required to deny access to structured EF objects in case of “Termination state” of the TOE life cycle.
- FDP_ACC.1/KEY requires that the TSF enforces an access control policy to restrict operations on dedicated key objects performed by subjects of the TOE.
- FDP_ACF.1/KEY requires that the TSF enforce an access control policy to restrict operations on dedicated key objects based on a set of rules defined in the SFR. Also, the TSF is required to deny access to dedicated key objects in case of “Termination state” of the TOE life cycle.
- FMT_MSA.3 requires that the TSF enforces an access control policy that provides restrictive default values for the used security attributes. Alternative default values for these security attributes shall only be allowed for dedicated authorized roles.

- FMT_SMF.1 requires that the TSF implements dedicated management functions that are given in the SFR.
- FMT_MSA.1/Life requires that the TSF enforces the access control policy to restrict the ability to manage life cycle relevant security attributes like lifeCycleStatus. For that purpose the SFRs require management functions to implement these operations.
- FMT_MSA.1/SEF requires that the TSF enforces the access control policy to restrict the ability to manage of security attributes of recorder. For that purpose the SFRs require management functions to implement these operations.
- FMT_MTD.1/PIN requires that the TSF restricts the ability to change password objects by the implementation of dedicated commands and management functions.
- FMT_MSA.1/PIN requires that the TSF enforces the access control policy to restrict the ability to read, change, enable, disable and optionally perform further operations of security attributes for password objects. For that purpose the SFR requires management functions to implement these operations.
- FMT_MTD.1/Auth requires that the TSF restricts the ability to import device authentication reference data by the implementation of dedicated commands and management functions.
- FMT_MSA.1/Auth requires that the TSF enforces the access control policy to restrict the ability to read security attributes for the device authentication reference data. For that purpose the SFR requires management functions to implement this operation.
- FMT_MTD.1/NE restricts the ability to export sensitive TSF data to dedicated roles, some sensitive user data like private authentication keys are not allowed to be exported at all.

253 The security objective **O.KeyManagement** “Generation and import of keys” requires the ability of the TSF to secure generation, import, distribution, access control and destruction of cryptographic keys. Also, the TSF is required to support the import and export of public keys. This objective is addressed by the following SFRs:

- FCS_RNG.1 requires that the TSF provides a random number generator of a specific class used for generation of keys.
- FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM, FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_CKM.1/RSA, FCS_CKM.1/ELC, require that the TSF generates cryptographic keys with specific key generation algorithms as stated in the SFRs. The mentioned SFRs are needed to fulfil different requirements of the intended usage of the cryptographic keys.
- FCS_CKM.4 requires that the TSF destroys cryptographic keys in accordance with a given specific key destruction method.
- FDP_ACC.1/KEY and FDP_ACF.1/KEY controls access to the key management and the cryptographic operations using keys.
- FMT_MSA.1/Life requires restriction of the management of security attributes of the keys to subjects authorized for specific commands.

254 The security objective **O.Crypto** “Cryptographic functions” requires the ability of the TSF to implement secure cryptographic algorithms. This objective is addressed by the following SFRs:

- FCS_RNG.1 requires that the TSF provides a random number generator of a specific class used for generation of keys.
- FCS_COP.1/SHA requires that the TSF provides different hashing algorithms that are referenced in the SFR.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.3TDES requires that the TSF provides decryption and encryption using 3TDES for secure messaging.

- FCS_COP.1/ COS.AES requires that the TSF provides decryption and encryption using AES with different key sizes.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.RMAC requires that the TSF provides computation and verification of cryptographic checksums using the Retail MAC algorithm.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.CMAC requires that the TSF provides computation and verification of cryptographic checksums using the CMAC algorithm.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S requires that the TSF provides the generation of digital signatures based on the RSA algorithm and different modulus' lengths.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.V requires that the TSF provides the verification of digital signatures based on the RSA algorithm and different modulus' lengths.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S requires that the TSF provides the generation of digital signatures based on the ECDSA and different hash algorithms and different key sizes.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.V requires that the TSF provides the verification of digital signatures based on the ECDSA and different hash algorithms and different key sizes.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA requires that the TSF provides encryption and decryption capabilities based on RSA algorithms with different modulus' lengths.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC requires that the TSF provides encryption and decryption capabilities based on ELC algorithms with different key sizes.
- FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM, FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_CKM.1/RSA, FCS_CKM.1/ELC, require that the TSF generates cryptographic keys with specific key generation algorithms as stated in the SFRs. The mentioned SFRs are needed to fulfil different requirements of the intended usage of the cryptographic keys.

255 The security objective **O.SecureMessaging** "Secure messaging" requires the ability of the TSF to use and enforce the use of a trusted channel to successfully authenticated external entities that ensures the integrity and confidentiality of the transmitted data between the TSF and the external entity. This objective is addressed by the following SFRs:

- FCS_COP.1/ COS.3TDES requires that the TSF provides decryption and encryption using 3TDES for secure messaging.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.AES requires that the TSF provides decryption and encryption using AES with different key sizes. One use case of that required functionality is secure messaging.
- FCS_COP.1/ COS.RMAC requires that the TSF provides computation and verification of cryptographic checksums using the Retail MAC algorithm. One use case of that required functionality is secure messaging.
- FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM requires that the TSF generates cryptographic keys with specific key generation algorithms as stated in the SFR.
- FTP_ITC.1/TC requires that the TSF provides a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product. The channel provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data against modification and disclosure.

6.3.2 Rationale for SFR's Dependencies

256 Table 3 in section 6.3.1 "Dependencies of security functional requirements" in BSI-PP-0035 [11] lists the security functional requirements defined in BSI-PP-0035, their dependencies and whether they are satisfied by other security requirements defined in this Protection Profile. Please refer that table and the text following after that table justifying this in detail for the further details on the remaining cases.

- 257 The dependency analysis for the security functional requirements shows that the basis for mutual support and internal consistency between all defined functional requirements is satisfied. All dependencies between the chosen functional components are analysed, and non-dissolved dependencies are appropriately explained.
- 258 The dependency analysis has directly been made within the description of each SFR in sec. 6.1 above. All dependencies being expected by CC part 2 and by extended components definition in chap. 5 are either fulfilled or their non-fulfilment is justified.
- 259 The following table lists the required dependencies of the SFRs of this PP and gives the concrete SFRs from this document which fulfil the required dependencies.

SFR	dependent on	fulfilled by
FDP_RIP.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FPT_FLS.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FPT_EMS.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FPT_TDC.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FPT_ITE.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FPT_ITE.2	No dependencies.	n. a.
FPT_TST.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_AFL.1/PIN	FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication.	FIA_UAU.1
FIA_AFL.1/PUC	FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication.	FIA_UAU.1
FIA_ATD.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_UAU.1	FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification.	FIA_UID.1
FIA_UAU.4	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_UAU.5	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_UAU.6	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_UID.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_API.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FMT_SMR.1	FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification	FIA_UID.1
FIA_USB.1	FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition	FIA_ATD.1
FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.	FDP_ACF.1/ MF_DF
FDP_ACF.1/ MF_DF	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation	FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FMT_MSA.3
FDP_ACC.1/EF	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.	FDP_ACF.1/EF
FDP_ACF.1/EF	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation	FDP_ACC.1/EF, FMT_MSA.3
FDP_ACC.1/TEF	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.	FDP_ACF.1/TEF
FDP_ACF.1/TEF	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control,	FDP_ACC.1/TEF,

SFR	dependent on	fulfilled by
	FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation	FMT_MSA.3
FDP_ACC.1/SEF	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.	FDP_ACF.1/SEF
FDP_ACF.1/SEF	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation	FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FMT_MSA.3
FDP_ACC.1/KEY	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.	FDP_ACF.1/KEY
FDP_ACF.1/KEY	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation	FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FMT_MSA.3
FMT_MSA.3	FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes, FMT_SMR.1 Security roles	FMT_MSA.1/Life, FMT_MSA.1/SEF, FMT_MSA.1/PIN, FMT_MSA.1/Auth, FMT_SMR.1
FMT_SMF.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FMT_MSA.1/Life	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control], FMT_SMR.1 Security roles, FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions	FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACC.1/EF, FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FMT_SMR.1, FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MSA.1/SEF	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control], FMT_SMR.1 Security roles, FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions	FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACC.1/EF, FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FMT_SMR.1, FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MTD.1/PIN	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles, FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions	FMT_SMR.1, FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MSA.1/PIN	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control], FMT_SMR.1 Security roles, FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions	FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACC.1/EF, FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FMT_SMR.1, FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MTD.1/Auth	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles, FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions	FMT_SMR.1, FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MSA.1/Auth	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control],	FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACC.1/EF, FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACC.1/SEF,

SFR	dependent on	fulfilled by
	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles, FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions	FDP_ACC.1/KEY, FMT_SMR.1, FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MTD.1/NE	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles, FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions	FMT_SMR.1, FMT_SMF.1
FCS_RNG.1	No dependencies.	n. a.
FCS_COP.1/SHA	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	The dependent SFRs are not applicable here because FCS_COP.1/SHA does not use any keys.
FCS_COP.1/ COS.3TDES	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/ COS.AES	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/ COS.RMAC	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.	FCS_COP.1/ COS.3TDES, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.	FCS_COP.1/ COS.3TDES, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.	FCS_COP.1/ COS.AES, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_CKM.1/RSA	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or	FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S,

SFR	dependent on	fulfilled by
	FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.	FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.V, FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_CKM.1/ELC	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.	FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC, FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_CKM.1/ DH.PACE	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.	FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/ COS.CMAC	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.S	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/RSA, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA.V	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/RSA, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/ COS.ECDSA.S	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ELC, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/ COS.RSA	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or	FCS_CKM.1/RSA, FCS_CKM.4

SFR	dependent on	fulfilled by
	FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	
FCS_COP.1/ COS.ELC	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ELC, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_CKM.4	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]	FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM, FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_CKM.1/RSA, FCS_CKM.1/ELC, FCS_CKM.1/ DH.PACE
FTP_ITC.1/TC	No dependencies.	n. a.

Table 25: Dependencies of the SFR

6.3.3 Security Assurance Requirements Rationale

- 260 The current assurance package was chosen based on the pre-defined assurance package EAL4. This package permits a developer to gain maximum assurance from positive security engineering based on good commercial development practices which, though rigorous, do not require substantial specialist knowledge, skills, and other resources. EAL4 is the highest level, at which it is likely to retrofit to an existing product line in an economically feasible way. EAL4 is applicable in those circumstances where developers or users require a moderate to high level of independently assured security in conventional commodity TOEs and are prepared to incur additional security specific engineering costs.
- 261 Please refer section 6.3.3 “Rationale for the Assurance Requirements” in BSI-PP-0035 [11] for the details regarding the chosen assurance level EAL4 augmented with ALC_DVS.2 and AVA_VAN.5.
- 262 The selection of the component ATE_DPT.2 provides a higher assurance than the pre-defined EAL4 package due to requiring the functional testing of SFR-enforcing modules. The functional testing of SFR-enforcing modules is due to the TOE building a smartcard platform with very broad and powerful security functionality but without object system. An augmentation with ATE_DPT.2 only for the SFR specified in BSI-PP-0035 [11] would have been sufficient to fulfil the conformance, but this would contradict the intention of BSI-PP-0035. Therefore the augmentation with ATE_DPT.2 is required for the complete Protection Profile.
- 263 The selection of the component ALC_DVS.2 provides a higher assurance of the security of the development and manufacturing, especially for the secure handling of sensitive material. This augmentation was chosen due to the broad application of the TOE in security critical applications.

264 The selection of the component AVA_VAN.5 provides a higher assurance than the pre-defined EAL4 package, namely requiring a vulnerability analysis to assess the resistance to penetration attacks performed by an attacker possessing a high attack potential.

265 The set of assurance requirements being part of EAL4 fulfils all dependencies a priori.

266 The augmentation of EAL4 chosen comprises the following assurance components:

- ATE_DPT.2,
- ALC_DVS.2, and
- AVA_VAN.5.

267 For these additional assurance component, all dependencies are met or exceeded in the EAL4 assurance package:

Component	Dependencies required by CC Part 3	Dependency fulfilled by
TOE security assurance requirements (only additional to EAL4)		
ALC_DVS.2	no dependencies	-
ATE_DPT.2	ADV_ARC.1	ADV_ARC.1
	ADV_TDS.3	ADV_TDS.3
	ATE_FUN.1	ATE_FUN.1
AVA_VAN.5	ADV_ARC.1	ADV_ARC.1
	ADV_FSP.4	ADV_FSP.4
	ADV_TDS.3	ADV_TDS.3
	ADV_IMP.1	ADV_IMP.1
	AGD_OPE.1	AGD_OPE.1
	AGD_PRE.1	AGD_PRE.1
	ATE_DPT.1	ATE_DPT.2

Table 26: SAR Dependencies

7 Package Crypto Box

268 The COS may support optionally additional cryptographic functionality according to [21]. This chapter defines the Package Crypto Box to be used by the ST writer if the TOE provides this security functionality.

7.1 TOE Overview

269 Additional to the TOE definition given in section 1.2.1 TOE definition and operational usage the TOE is equipped with additional cryptographic functionality.

7.2 Security Problem Definition

7.2.1 Assets

Assets

270 The assets do not differ from the assets defined in section 3.1.

Subjects and external entities

271 There are no additional external entities and subjects than those defined in section 3.1.

7.2.2 Threats

272 There are no additional threats than the threats defined in section 3.2.

7.2.3 Organisational Security Policies

273 There are no additional Organisational Security Policies than the Organisational Security Policies defined in section 3.3.

7.2.4 Assumptions

274 There are no additional Assumptions than the Assumptions defined in section 3.4.

7.3 Security Objectives

275 The Security Objectives for the TOE (section 4.1) and the Security Objectives for Operational Environment (section 4.2) is supplemented for the package crypto box. Therefore the Security Objective Rationale (section 4.3) is supplemented as well.

276 The TOE shall provide a “**Trusted channel (O.TrustedChannel)**” as specified below.

O.TrustedChannel

Trusted channel

The TOE supports trusted channel for protection of the confidentiality and the integrity for commands to be sent to successful authenticated device and receiving responses from this device on demand of the external application.

277 The operational environment shall provide a “**Secure messaging support of external devices (OE.SecureMessaging)**” as specified below.

OE.SecureMessaging

Secure messaging support of external devices

The external device communicating with the TOE trough a trusted channel supports device authentication with key derivation, secure messaging for received commands and sending responses.

278 The security objectives O.TrustedChannel and OE.SecureMessaging mitigate the threat T.Intercept if the operational environment is not able to protect the communication by other means.

7.4 Security Requirements for Package Crypto Box

279 Additional to the Authentication reference data of the devices and security attributes listed in Table 15 the following table defines the authentication reference data of subjects for the TOE with package crypto box including the authentication data used by the TSF itself (cf. FIA_API.1) as TSF data

Authentication reference data	Subject type	Operations
Symmetric authentication key	Device	INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE used for trusted channel
Session key SK4TC	TSF	PSO ENCIPHER, PSO DECIPHER, PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM, and PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM used for trusted channel

Table 27: Authentication Data of the COS with package crypto box

280 Additional to the Security Functional Requirements for the TOE defined in section 6.1 the TOE shall meet the following SFR.

281 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Random number generation – Get random command (FCS_RNG.1/GR)” as specified below.

FCS_RNG.1/GR	Random number generation – Get random command
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FCS_RNG.1.1/GR	The TSF shall provide a <u>physical</u> ²⁵⁴ random number generator [selection: PTG.2, PTG.3] [6] for GET RANDOM that implements: [assignment: <i>list of security capabilities of the selected RNG class</i>].
FCS_RNG.1.2/GR	The TSF shall provide random numbers [selection: bits, octets of bits, numbers] [assignment: <i>format of the numbers</i>] that meet [assignment: <i>a defined quality metric of the selected RNG class</i>].

282 *Application note 48*: This SFR requires the TOE to generate random numbers used for key generation according to TR-03116 [19] section 3.5, requiring RNG classes identified in the selection in element FCS_RNG.1.1 and recommending RNG of class PTG.3. If the TOE will provide random numbers by means of command GET RANDOM for key generation of external devices like the connector (i.e. usage as gSMC-K) or the eHealth card terminals (i.e. usage as SMC-KT) the provided random numbers shall meet TR-03116 [19] section 3.5, as well. If the command GET RANDOM will be used to seed another deterministic RNG the external device the TOE shall implement RNG of class PTG.2 or PTG.3 for this purpose. The COS specification [21] requires to implement RNG for the command GET RANDOM meeting TR-03116 [19] section 3.4, which allows also for class DRG.2 RNG [7].

283 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – CB 3TDES (FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES	Cryptographic operation – CB 3TDES
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/CB.3TDES	The TSF shall perform <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) <u>encryption with negotiated key for command PSO ENCIPHER,</u> (2) <u>decryption with negotiated key for command PSO DECIPHER,</u> (3) <u>encryption and decryption with card internal key for commands</u> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. <u>MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE,</u> b. <u>EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE,</u> (4) <u>encryption with card internal key for command INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE, and</u> (5) <u>encryption and decryption for trusted channel PSO ENCIPHER and PSO DECIPHER</u>²⁵⁵ <p>in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm <u>3TDES in CBC mode</u>²⁵⁶ and cryptographic key sizes <u>192 bit (168 bit</u></p>

²⁵⁴ [selection: *physical, non-physical true, deterministic, hybrid*]

²⁵⁵ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁵⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

effectively)²⁵⁷ that meet the following TR-03116 [19], NIST SP 800-67 [38]²⁵⁸.

284 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – CB RMAC (FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC	Cryptographic operation – CB RMAC
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/CB.RMAC	The TSF shall perform <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>computation of cryptographic checksum for command</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM,</u>b. <u>INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE,</u>(2) <u>computation and verification of cryptographic checksum for command</u><ol style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE,</u>b. <u>EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE,</u>(3) <u>computation and verification of cryptographic checksum for trusted channel</u>²⁵⁹ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm <u>Retail MAC 32</u> ²⁶⁰ and cryptographic key sizes <u>192 bit (168 bit effectively)</u> ²⁶¹ that meet the following <u>TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21]</u> ²⁶² .

285 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – CB AES (FCS_COP.1/CB.AES)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/CB.AES	Cryptographic operation – CB AES
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/CB.AES	The TSF shall perform <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>encryption with negotiated key for command PSO ENCIPHER,</u>(2) <u>and decryption with negotiated key for command PSO DECIPHER,</u>(3) <u>encryption and decryption with card internal key for commands</u>

²⁵⁷ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁵⁸ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²⁵⁹ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁶⁰ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁶¹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁶² [assignment: *list of standards*]

- a. MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE,
- b. EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE,
- (4) encryption with card internal key for command
INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE,
- (5) encryption and decryption for trusted channel
 - a. PSO ENCIPHER,
 - b. PSO DECIPHER²⁶³

in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm AES in CBC mode²⁶⁴ and cryptographic key sizes 128 bit, 192 bit, 256 bit²⁶⁵ that meet the following: TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21], FIPS 197 [33]²⁶⁶.

286 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – CB CMAC (FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC	Cryptographic operation – CB CMAC
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/CB.CMAC	The TSF shall perform <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>computation of cryptographic checksum for command</u><ul style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>INTERNAL AUTHENTICATE,</u>(2) <u>computation and verification of cryptographic checksum for command</u><ul style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>MUTUAL AUTHENTICATE,</u>b. <u>EXTERNAL AUTHENTICATE,</u>(3) <u>computation and verification of cryptographic checksum for trusted channel</u><ul style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>PSO COMPUTE CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM,</u>b. <u>PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM</u>²⁶⁷ <p>in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm <u>CMAC</u>²⁶⁸ and cryptographic key sizes <u>128 bit, 192 bit, and 256 bit</u>²⁶⁹ that meet the following <u>TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21], [36]</u>²⁷⁰.</p>

287 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – CB RSA (FCS_COP.1/CB.RSA)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/CB.RSA	Cryptographic operation – CB RSA
-------------------------	----------------------------------

²⁶³ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁶⁴ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁶⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁶⁶ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²⁶⁷ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁶⁸ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁶⁹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁷⁰ [assignment: *list of standards*]

Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/CB.RSA	The TSF shall perform <u>encryption with stored key for command PSO ENCIPHER</u> ²⁷¹ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm (1) <u>for encryption:</u> a. <u>RSAES-PKCS1-v1_5-Encrypt</u> ([34] section 7.2.1), b. <u>RSA-OAEP-Encrypt</u> ([34] section 7.1.1), (2) <u>for decryption:</u> a. <u>RSAES-PKCS1-v1_5-Decrypt</u> ([34] section 7.2.2), b. <u>RSA-OAEP-Decrypt</u> ([34] section 7.1.2) ²⁷² and cryptographic key sizes <u>2048 bit and 3072 bit modulo length</u> ²⁷³ that meet the following <u>PKCS #1 [34]</u> ²⁷⁴ .

288 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – CB ECC (FCS_COP.1/CB.ELC)” as specified below.

FCS_COP.1/CB.ELC	Cryptographic operation – CB ECC
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction
FCS_COP.1.1/CB.ELC	The TSF shall perform <u>encryption with stored key for command PSO ENCIPHER</u> ²⁷⁵ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm <u>ELC encryption with COS standard curves</u> ²⁷⁶ and cryptographic key sizes <u>256 bits, 384 bits, 512 bits</u> ²⁷⁷ that meet the following <u>TR-03111 [17], chapter 4.3.1, 4.3.3 and 5.3.1.2</u> ²⁷⁸ .

289 The following table provides an overview for security functional requirements coverage also giving an evidence for *sufficiency* and *necessity* of the SFRs chosen in the cryptobox package.

²⁷¹ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁷² [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁷³ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁷⁴ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²⁷⁵ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁷⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁷⁷ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁷⁸ [assignment: *list of standards*]

	O.Integrity	O.Confidentiality	O.Resp-COS	O.TSFDataExport	O.Authentication	O.AccessControl	O.KeyManagement	O.Crypto	O.SecureMessaging	O.TrustedChannel
FCS_RNG.1/GR								X		
FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES								X		X
FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC								X		X
FCS_COP.1/CB.AES								X		X
FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC								X		X
FCS_COP.1/CB.ELC								X		
FCS_COP.1/CB.RSA								X		

Table 28: Mapping between security objectives for the TOE and SFR for package Cryptobox

290 Table 28 above should be taken as extension of Table 24 in order to cover the whole set of security objectives. Hence, the mappings between security objectives and SFRs in the table above are used as *additional* mappings to address the corresponding security objectives.

291 The security objective **O.TrustedChannel** “Trusted channel” requires cryptographic functionality for trusted channel support as described by SFR FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES, FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC, FCS_COP.1/CB.AES and FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC.

292 The security objective O.Crypto “Cryptographic functions” requires to implement secure algorithms for trusted channel support as for all cryptographic functionality.

- FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES requires that the TSF provides decryption and encryption using 3TDES to be used in dedicated commands.
- FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC requires that the TSF provides computation and verification of cryptographic checksums using the Retail MAC algorithm to be used in dedicated commands.
- FCS_COP.1/CB.AES requires that the TSF provides decryption and encryption using AES with different key sizes to be used in dedicated commands.
- FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC requires that the TSF provides computation and verification of cryptographic checksums using the CMAC algorithm and different key sizes to be used in dedicated commands.

293 The security objective **O.Crypto** “Cryptographic functions” requires the provision of security services by implementation of secure cryptographic algorithms and protocols. The following SFRs provide additional cryptographic services:

- FCS_RNG.1/GR providing secure random numbers for external entities,
- FCS_COP.1/CB.ELC requires that the TSF provides encryption capabilities based on ELC algorithms with different key sizes to be used in dedicated commands.
- FCS_COP.1/CB.RSA requires that the TSF provides encryption capabilities based on RSA algorithms with different modulus’ lengths to be used in dedicated commands.

294 The following table lists the required dependencies of the SFRs of this PP package and gives the concrete SFRs from this document which fulfils the required dependencies.

SFR	dependent on	fulfilled by
FCS_RNG.1/GR	No dependencies.	n. a.
FCS_COP.1/CB.3TDES	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/CB.RMAC	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ 3TDES_SM, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/CB.AES	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/CB.CMAC	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ AES.SM, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/CB.ELC	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/ELC, FCS_CKM.4
FCS_COP.1/CB.RSA	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/RSA, FCS_CKM.4

Table 29: Dependencies of the SFRs

8 Package Contactless

295 The COS may support optionally additional functionality for contactless communication according to [21]. This chapter defines the Package Contactless to be used by the ST writer if the TOE provides this security functionality.

8.1 TOE Overview

296 This package describes additional mechanisms mostly used for contactless interfaces, i.e. PACE. The COS has to detect by itself if the underlying chip uses a contactless interface and has to use interface depended access rules in that case.

8.2 Security Problem Definition

8.2.1 Assets

Assets

297 The assets do not differ from the assets defined in section 3.1.

Security Attributes of Users and Subjects

298 The PACE protocol provides mutual authentication between a smartcard running the PICC role and a terminal running PCD role of the protocol as described in [16] part 2. The TOE supporting the contactless package implements the PICC role and the PCD role of the PACE protocol. When the TOE running the PICC role of the PACE protocol the subject gains security attributes used by the access control and bound to the use of the established secure messaging channel after successful authentication. When the TOE running the PCD role of the PACE protocol the subject gains security attributes defining the authentication status of the external user communicating through the trusted channel established after successful authentication. This authentication status is identified in the response code of the trusted channel commands PSO DECIPHER and PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM.

299 The support of contactless communication introduces additional security attributes of users and subjects bound to external entities and subjects are considered

User type	Definition
device with contactless communication	An external Device communicating with the TOE trough the contactless interface. The subject bind to this device has the security attribute "kontaktlos" (contactless communication).
device authenticated using PACE protocol in PCD role	An external Device communicating with the TOE trough the contactless interface and successful authenticated by PACE protocol in PCD role.
device authenticated using PACE protocol in PICC role	An external Device communicating with the TOE trough the contactless interface and successful authenticated by PACE

User type	Definition
	protocol in PICC role.

8.2.2 Threats

300 There are no additional threats than the threats defined in section 3.2.

8.2.3 Organisational Security Policies

301 There are no additional Organisational Security Policies than the Organisational Security Policies defined in section 3.3.

8.2.4 Assumptions

302 There are no additional Assumptions than the Assumptions defined in section 3.4.

8.3 Security Objectives

303 The Security Objectives for the TOE (section 4.1) and the Security Objectives for Operational Environment (section 4.2) are supplemented for the package contactless interface. Therefore the Security Objective Rationale (section 4.3) is supplemented as well.

304 The TOE shall provide a “Protection of contactless communication with PACE (O.PACE)” as specified below.

O.PACE

Protection of contactless communication with PACE

The TOE supports the chip part of the PACE protocol in order to protect the confidentiality and the integrity of data communicated through the contactless interface this device on demand of the external application.

305 The operational environment shall provide a “PACE support by terminals (OE.PACE_Terminal)” as specified below.

OE.PACE_Terminal

PACE support by terminals

The external device communicating through a contactless interface with the TOE using PACE shall support the terminal part of the PACE protocol.

306 The security objectives O.PACE and OE.PACE_Terminal mitigate the threat T.Intercept if contactless communication is used and the operational environment is not able to protect the communication by other means.

8.4 Security Requirements for Package Contactless

307 Additional to the authentication reference data of the devices listed in Table 15 the following table defines the authentication reference data of subjects for the TOE with package contactless including the authentication data used by the TSF itself (cf. FIA_API.1) as TSF data .

Subject type	Authentication reference data and security attributes	Operations
Device	<p>Card Access Number (CAN) <u>Authentication verification data</u> Card Access Number (CAN) stored in TOE MAC session key SK4SM <u>Security attributes</u> <i>keyIdentifier</i> of the used CAN in the <i>globalSecurityList</i> if CAN was in MF or in <i>dfSecurityList</i> if the CAN was in the respective folder SK4SM referenced in <i>macKey</i> and <i>SSCmac</i></p>	<p>GENERAL AUTHENTICATE TOE running PACE protocol role as PICC</p>
Device	<p>Card Access Number (CAN) <u>Authentication verification data</u> Card Access Number (CAN) provided to the TOE MAC session key SK4TC <u>Security attributes</u> SK4TC referenced in <i>keyReferenceList.macCalculation</i> and <i>keyReferenceList.dataEncipher</i></p>	<p>GENERAL AUTHENTICATE TOE running PACE protocol role as PCD PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM and PSO DECIPHER</p>

Table 30: Authentication Data of the COS with package contactless

308 Additional to the Security Functional Requirements for the TOE defined in section 6.1 the TOE shall meet the following SFR.

309 The security functionality for access control in case of contactless communication is covered already by the SFR FDP_ACF.1/MF_DF, FDP_ACF.1/EF, FDP_ACF.1/TEF, FDP_ACF.1/SEF and FDP_ACF.1/KEY because the TSF shall implement the relevant security attributes described in table 30 even the contactless package is not included.

310 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Random number generation – RNG for PACE ()” as specified below.

**FCS_RNG.1/
PACE** Random number generation – RNG for PACE

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

FCS_RNG.1.1/
PACE The TSF shall provide a [selection: *hybrid deterministic*, *hybrid physical*]²⁷⁹ random number generator **RNG class [selection: *DRG.4*, *PTG.3*] for PACE protocol** that implements: [assignment: *list of security*

²⁷⁹ [selection: *physical*, *non-physical true*, *deterministic*, *hybrid*]

capabilities of the selected RNG class].

FCS_RNG.1.2/
PACE The TSF provide random numbers [selection: *bits, octets of bits, numbers [assignment: format of the numbers]*] that meet [assignment: *a defined quality metric of the selected RNG class*].

311 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – PACE secure messaging encryption (FCS_COP.1/PACE.ENC)” as specified below:

**FCS_COP.1/
PACE.ENC** Cryptographic operation – PACE secure messaging encryption

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

FCS_COP.1.1/
PACE.ENC The TSF shall perform decryption and encryption for secure messaging²⁸⁰ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm AES in CBC mode²⁸¹ and cryptographic key sizes [selection: *128, 192, 256*] bit²⁸² that meet the following TR-03110 [16], COS specification [21]²⁸³.

312 *Application note 49*: This SFR requires the TOE to implement the cryptographic primitive AES for secure messaging with encryption of transmitted data and encrypting the nonce in the first step of PACE. The related session keys are agreed between the TOE and the terminal as part of the PACE protocol according to the FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE.

313 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic operation – PACE secure messaging MAC (FCS_COP.1/PACE.MAC)” as specified below.

**FCS_COP.1/
PACE.MAC** Cryptographic operation – PACE secure messaging MAC

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: [FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction

FCS_COP.1.1/
PACE.MAC The TSF shall perform MAC calculation for secure messaging²⁸⁴ in accordance with a specified cryptographic algorithm CMAC²⁸⁵ and cryptographic key sizes [selection: *128, 192, 256*] bit²⁸⁶ that meet the following TR-03110 [16], COS specification [21]²⁸⁷.

²⁸⁰ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁸¹ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁸² [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁸³ [assignment: *list of standards*]

²⁸⁴ [assignment: *list of cryptographic operations*]

²⁸⁵ [assignment: *cryptographic algorithm*]

²⁸⁶ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁸⁷ [assignment: *list of standards*]

314 *Application note 50*: This SFR requires the TOE to implement the cryptographic primitive for secure messaging with message authentication code over transmitted data. The related session keys are agreed between the TOE and the terminal as part of the PACE protocol according to the FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE.

315 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic key generation – DH by PACE (FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE)” as specified below.

FCS_CKM.1/ DH.PACE	Cryptographic key generation – DH by PACE
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation] FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.
FCS_CKM.1.1/ DH.PACE	The TSF shall generate cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm [selection: <u>Diffie-Hellman-Protocol compliant to PKCS#3, ECDH compliant to [17] using the protocol [selection: id-PACE-ECDH-GM-AES-CBC-CMAC-128 with brainpoolP256r1, id-PACE-ECDH-GM-AES-CBC-CMAC-192 with brainpoolP384r1, id-PACE-ECDH-GM-AES-CBC-CMAC-256 with brainpoolP512r1]</u> ²⁸⁸ and specified cryptographic key sizes [selection: 256, 384, 512] ²⁸⁹ that meet the following TR-03110 [16], TR-03111 [17] ²⁹⁰ .

316 *Application note 51*: The TOE exchanges a shared secret with the external entity during the PACE protocol, see [16]. This protocol may be based on the Diffie-Hellman-Protocol compliant to PKCS#3 (i.e. modulo arithmetic based cryptographic algorithm, cf. [33]) or on the ECDH compliant to TR-03111 [17] (i.e. the elliptic curve cryptographic algorithm ECKA). The shared secret is used for deriving the AES session keys for message encryption and message authentication according to [16] for the TSF as required by, FCS_COP.1/ COS.AES, and FCS_COP.1/ COS.CMAC. FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE implicitly contains the requirements for the hashing functions used for key derivation by demanding compliance to TR-03110 [16].

317 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Cryptographic key destruction - PACE (FCS_CKM.4/PACE)” as specified below.

FCS_CKM.4/ PACE	Cryptographic key destruction - PACE
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation]
FCS_CKM.4.1/ PACE	The TSF shall destroy cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key destruction method [assignment: <i>cryptographic key destruction method</i>] that meets the following: [assignment: <i>list of standards</i>].

²⁸⁸ [assignment: *cryptographic key generation algorithm*]

²⁸⁹ [assignment: *cryptographic key sizes*]

²⁹⁰ [assignment: *list of standards*]

318 *Application note 52*: The TOE shall destroy the encryption session keys and the message authentication keys for PACE protocol after reset or termination of the secure messaging (or trusted channel) session or reaching fail secure state according to FPT_FLS.1. The TOE shall clear the memory area of any session keys before starting a new communication with an external entity in a new after-reset-session as required by FDP_RIP.1.

319 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Timing of identification - PACE (FIA_UID.1/PACE)” as specified below:

FIA_UID.1/ PACE	Timing of identification - PACE
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication.
FIA_UID.1.1/ PACE	The TSF shall allow <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>reading the ATS</u>(2) <u>to establish a communication channel,</u>(3) <u>[assignment: list of TSF-mediated actions]</u>²⁹¹ on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is identified.
FIA_UID.1.2/ PACE	The TSF shall require each user to be successfully identified before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

320 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Timing of authentication - PACE (FIA_UAU.1/PACE)” as specified below:

FIA_UAU.1/ PACE	Timing of authentication - PACE
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification.
FIA_UAU.1.1/ PACE	The TSF shall allow <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>to establish a communication channel,</u>(2) <u>reading the ATS,</u>(3) <u>actions allowed according to FIA_UID.1/PACE and FIA_UAU.1,</u>(4) <u>[assignment: list of TSF-mediated actions]</u>²⁹² on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.
FIA_UAU.1.2/ PACE	The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

321 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Single-use authentication mechanisms (FIA_UAU.4/PACE)” as specified below:

FIA_UAU.4/ PACE	Single-use authentication mechanisms
Hierarchical to:	No other components.

²⁹¹ [assignment: *list of TSF-mediated actions*]

²⁹² [assignment: *list of TSF mediated actions*]

Dependencies: No dependencies.
FIA_UAU.4.1/
PACE The TSF shall prevent reuse of authentication data related to
(1) PACE Protocol in PICC role according to TR-03116 [19], COS specification [21]²⁹³.

322 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Multiple authentication mechanisms - PACE (FIA_UAU.5/PACE)” as specified below:

**FIA_UAU.5/
PACE** Multiple authentication mechanisms - PACE protocol

Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: No dependencies.
FIA_UAU.5.1/
PACE The TSF shall provide
(1) PACE protocol in PICC role according to [16] [20] using commands GENERAL AUTHENTICATE,
(2) secure messaging in MAC-ENC mode using PACE session keys according to [20], chapter 13, and [16], part 3, in PICC role.
(3) PACE protocol in PCD role according to [16] [20] using commands GENERAL AUTHENTICATE,
(4) trusted channel using PACE session keys according to [20], chapter 13, and [16], part 3, in PCD role²⁹⁴
to support user authentication.

FIA_UAU.5.2/
PACE The TSF shall authenticate any user's claimed identity according to the
(1) the PACE protocol as PICC is used for authentication of the device using PACE protocol in PCD role and secure messaging in MAC-ENC mode using PACE session keys is used to authenticate its commands,
(2) the PACE protocol as PCD is used for authentication of devices using PACE protocol in PICC role and trusted channel in MAC-ENC mode using PACE session keys is used and messages received in commands PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM and PSO DECIPHER²⁹⁵.

323 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Re-authenticating - PACE (FIA_UAU.6/PACE)” as specified below:

**FIA_UAU.6/
PACE** Re-authenticating - PACE protocol

Hierarchical to: No other components.
Dependencies: No dependencies.
FIA_UAU.6.1/
PACE The TSF shall re-authenticate the user under the conditions
(1) each command sent to the TOE after successful run of the PACE protocol as PICC shall be verified as being sent by the PACE terminal,

²⁹³ [assignment: *identified authentication mechanism(s)*]

²⁹⁴ [assignment: *list of multiple authentication mechanisms*]

²⁹⁵ [assignment: *rules describing how the multiple authentication mechanisms provide authentication*]

- (2) each message received in commands PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM and PSO DECIPHER after successful run of the PACE protocol as PCD shall be verified as being sent by the authenticated user²⁹⁶.

324 *Application note 53*: The PACE protocol as PICC specified in [26] starts secure messaging used for all commands exchanged after successful PACE authentication. The TOE checks each command by secure messaging in encrypt-then-authenticate mode based on CMAC whether it was sent by the successfully authenticated terminal (see FCS_COP.1/PACE.MAC for further details). The TOE does not execute any command with incorrect message authentication code. Therefore, the TOE re-authenticates the terminal connected, if a secure messaging error occurred, and accepts only those commands received from the initially authenticated terminal (see FIA_UAU.6). The PACE protocol as terminal specified in [16] will be specified more detailed in future versions of the COS specification [20].

325 The TOE shall meet the requirement “User-subject binding - PACE (FIA_USB.1/PACE)” as specified below:

FIA_USB.1/ PACE	User-subject binding - PACE protocol
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition
FIA_USB.1.1/ PACE	The TSF shall associate the following user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of that user: (1) <u>The authentication state for the device using PACE protocol in PCD role with</u> a. <u>keyIdentifier of the used CAN in the globalSecurityList if CAN was in MF or in dfSecurityList if the CAN was in the respective folder,</u> b. <u>SK4SM referenced in macKey and SSCmac</u> (2) <u>The authentication state for the device using PACE protocol in PICC role with SK4TC referenced in keyReferenceList.macCalculation and keyReferenceList.dataEncipher</u> ²⁹⁷ .
FIA_USB.1.2/ PACE	The TSF shall enforce the following rules on the initial association of user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of users: <u>see FIA_USB.1</u> ²⁹⁸ .
FIA_USB.1.3/ PACE	The TSF shall enforce the following rules governing changes to the user security attributes associated with subjects acting on the behalf of users: (1) <u>The authentication state for the device after successful authenticated using PACE protocol in PCD role is set to</u> a. <u>keyIdentifier of the used CAN in the globalSecurityList if CAN was in MF or in dfSecurityList if the CAN was in the respective DF,</u> b. <u>SK4SM referenced in macKey and SSCmac.</u> (2) <u>If an authentication attempt using PACE protocol in PCD role failed</u>

²⁹⁶ [assignment: *list of conditions under which re-authentication is required*]

²⁹⁷ [assignment: *list of user security attributes*]

²⁹⁸ [assignment: *rules for the initial association of attributes*]

- a. Executing GENERAL AUTHENTICATE for PACE Version 2 [16].
 - b. receiving commands failing the MAC verification or encryption defined for secure messaging.
 - c. receiving messages violation MAC verification or encryption defined for trusted channel established with PACE.
the authentication state for the specific context has to be set to “not authenticated” (i.e. the element in *globalSecurityList* respective in the *dfSecurityList* and the SK4SM are deleted).
- (3) The authentication state for the device after successful authenticated using PACE protocol in PICC role with SK4TC is set in *keyReferenceList.macCalculation* and *keyReferenceList.dataEncipher*.
 - (4) If the message received in commands PSO VERIFY CRYPTOGRAPHIC CHECKSUM fails the verification or the message received in command PSO DECIPHER fail the padding condition the authentication state of the user gained using PACE protocol in PICC role and bound to the SK4TC is changed to “not authenticated” (i.e. the *keyReferenceList.macCalculation*, *keyReferenceList.dataEncipher* and the SK4TC are deleted).
 - (5) all rules defined in FIA_USB.1.
 - (6) [assignment: *further rules for the changing of attributes*]²⁹⁹.

326 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Subset residual information protection - PACE (FDP_RIP.1/PACE)” as specified below:

FDP_RIP.1/ PACE	Subset residual information protection – PACE protocol
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FDP_RIP.1.1/ PACE	The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the [selection: <i>allocation of the resource to, deallocation of the resource from</i>] ³⁰⁰ the following objects: <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>Session Keys (immediately after closing related communication session).</u>(2) <u>any ephemeral secret having been generated during DH key exchange</u>(3) <u>[assignment: <i>list of additional objects</i>]³⁰¹.</u>

327 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Basic data exchange confidentiality - PACE (FDP_UCT.1/PACE)” as specified below:

²⁹⁹ [assignment: *rules for the changing of attributes*]

³⁰⁰ [selection: *allocation of the resource to, deallocation of the resource from*]

³⁰¹ [assignment: *list of objects*]

FDP_UCT.1/ PACE	Basic data exchange confidentiality – PACE protocol
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, or FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path] [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]
FDP_UCT.1.1/ PACE	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access control MF_DF SFP, access control EF SFP, access rule TEF SFP, access rule SEF SFP and access control key SFP³⁰² to transmit and receive³⁰³</u> user data in a manner protected from unauthorised disclosure.

328 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Data exchange integrity - PACE (FDP_UIT.1/PACE)” as specified below:

FDP_UIT.1/ PACE	Data exchange integrity - PACE protocol
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control] [FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, or FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path]
FDP_UIT.1.1/ PACE	The TSF shall enforce the <u>access control MF_DF SFP, access control EF SFP, access rule TEF SFP, access rule SEF SFP and access control key SFP³⁰⁴ to transmit and receive³⁰⁵</u> user data in a manner protected from <u>modification, deletion, insertion, and replay³⁰⁶</u> errors.
FDP_UIT.1.2/ PACE	The TSF shall be able to determine on receipt of user data, whether <u>modification, deletion, insertion, and replay³⁰⁷</u> has occurred.

329 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Inter-TSF trusted channel - PACE (FTP_ITC.1/PACE)” as specified below.

FTP_ITC.1/ PACE	Inter-TSF trusted channel - PACE
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FTP_ITC.1.1/ PACE	The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from modification or disclosure.
FTP_ITC.1.2/ PACE	The TSF shall permit <u>another trusted IT product³⁰⁸</u> to initiate communication via the trusted channel.

³⁰² [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*]

³⁰³ [selection: *transmit, receive*]

³⁰⁴ [assignment: *access control SFP(s) and/or information flow control SFP(s)*]

³⁰⁵ [selection: *transmit, receive*]

³⁰⁶ [selection: *modification, deletion, insertion, replay*]

³⁰⁷ [selection: *modification, deletion, insertion, replay*]

PACE

FTP_ITC.1.3/
PACE The TSF shall ~~initiate~~ **enforce**³⁰⁹ communication via the trusted channel for any data exchange between the TOE and the external user.³¹⁰.

330 *Application note 54:* The trusted IT product is the terminal. In FTP_ITC.1.3/PACE, the word “initiate” is changed to “enforce”, as the TOE is a passive device that can not initiate the communication. All the communication is initiated by the terminal, and the TOE enforces the trusted channel by means of PACE protocol after establishing a communication channel and reading the ATS.

331 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Security roles - PACE (FMT_SMR.1/PACE)” as specified below.

**FMT_SMR.1/
PACE** Security roles – PACE protocol

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification

FMT_SMR.1.1/
PACE The TSF shall maintain the roles

- (1) the roles defined in FMT_SMR.1,
- (2) PACE authenticated terminal,
- (3) [assignment: *additional authorised identified roles*]³¹¹.

FMT_SMR.1.2/
PACE The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

332 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Management of TSF data - PACE (FMT_MTD.1/PACE)” as specified below.

**FMT_MTD.1/
PACE** Management of TSF data – PACE protocol

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FMT_SMR.1 Security roles

FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions

FMT_MTD.1.1/
PACE The TSF shall restrict the ability to read³¹²³¹³ the

- (1) CAN used for PACE protocol in PICC role,
- (2) session keys of secure messaging channel established using PACE protocol in PICC role,
- (3) session keys of trusted channel established using PACE protocol in PCD role,
- (4) any secret stored during DH key exchange.

³⁰⁸ [selection: *the TSF, another trusted IT product*]

³⁰⁹ Refinement: The trusted IT product is the terminal. The word “initiate” is changed to “enforce”, as the TOE is a passive device that can not initiate the communication. All the communication are initiated by the Terminal, and the TOE enforce the trusted channel.

³¹⁰ [assignment: *list of functions for which a trusted channel is required*]

³¹¹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

³¹² [assignment: *other operations*]

³¹³ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

(5) [assignment: *list of TSF data*]³¹⁴
to none³¹⁵.

The TSF shall restrict the ability to import³¹⁶³¹⁷ the CAN used for PACE protocol in PCD role³¹⁸ to user authorized for command GENERAL AUTHENTICATE³¹⁹.

333 *Application note 55*: The refinement defined an additional rule for managing the CAN in a special case of the PACE protocol (i.e. the PCD role). E.g. the human user input the CAN into the smartcard terminal and the smartcard terminal sent the CAN to the SMC-KT (as TOE). The SMC-KT runs PACE protocol in PCD role and another smartcard runs PACE protocol in PICC role. The derived session keys SM4SM and SM4TC shall be kept secret.

334 The TOE shall meet the requirement Export of TSF data - PACE (FPT_ITE.2/PACE) as specified below.

**FPT_ITE.2/
PACE** Export of TSF data – PACE protocol

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

FPT_ITE.2.1/
PACE The TOE shall export

(1) the public TSF data as defined in FPT_ITE.2.1³²⁰

given the following conditions

(1) conditions as defined in FPT_ITE.2.1,

(2) no export of the card access number.³²¹

FPT_ITE.2.2/
PACE The TSF shall use [assignment: *list of encoding rules to be applied by TSF*] for the exported data.

335 The TOE shall meet the requirement “User attribute definition - PACE ” (FIA_ATD.1/PACE) as specified below.

**FIA_ATD.1/
PACE** User attribute definition – PACE protocol

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: No dependencies.

FIA_ATD.1.1/
PACE The TSF shall maintain the following list of security attributes belonging to individual users:

(1) For users defined in FIA_ATD.1

³¹⁴ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

³¹⁵ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

³¹⁶ [assignment: *other operations*]

³¹⁷ [selection: *change_default, query, modify, delete, clear, [assignment: other operations]*]

³¹⁸ [assignment: *list of TSF data*]

³¹⁹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

³²⁰ [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*]

³²¹ [assignment: *conditions for export*]

- (2) Additionally for Human User: authentication state gained with card access number (CAN)³²².

336 The TOE shall meet the requirement “TOE emanation - PACE (FPT_EMS.1/PACE)” as specified below (CC part 2 extended).

FPT_EMS.1/ PACE	TOE emanation – PACE protocol
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FPT_EMS.1.1/ PACE	The TOE shall not emit [assignment: <i>types of emissions</i>] in excess of [assignment: <i>specified limits</i>] enabling access to <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>Card access number (CAN)</u>,(2) <u>PACE session keys</u>,(3) <u>any ephemeral secret having been generated during DH key exchange</u>,(4) <u>any object listed in FPT_EMS.1</u>(5) [assignment: <i>list of additional types of TSF data</i>]³²³ and [assignment: <i>list of types of user data</i>].
FPT_EMS.1.2/ PACE	The TSF shall ensure <u>any users</u> ³²⁴ are unable to use the following interface <u>the contactless interface and circuit contacts</u> ³²⁵ to gain access to <ol style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>Card access number (CAN)</u>,(2) <u>PACE session keys</u>,(3) <u>any ephemeral secret having been generated during DH key exchange</u>,(4) <u>any object listed in FPT_EMS.1</u>,(5) [assignment: <i>list of additional types of TSF data</i>]³²⁶. and [assignment: <i>list of types of user data</i>].

337 The following table provides an overview for security functional requirements coverage also giving an evidence for *sufficiency* and *necessity* of the SFRs chosen in the “Package Contactless”.

³²² [assignment: *list of security attributes*]

³²³ [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*]

³²⁴ [assignment: *type of users*]

³²⁵ [assignment: *type of connection*]

³²⁶ [assignment: *list of types of TSF data*]

	O.Integrity	O.Confidentiality	O.Resp-COS	O.TSFDataExport	O.Authentication	O.AccessControl	O.KeyManagement	O.Crypto	O.PACE
FCS_RNG.1/PACE							X		X
FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE								X	X
FCS_CKM.4/PACE								X	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE.ENC								X	X
FCS_COP.1/PACE.MAC								X	X
FIA_UAU.1/PACE					X	X			X
FIA_ATD.1/PACE					X	X			X
FIA_USB.1/PACE					X	X			X
FIA_UAU.4/PACE					X	X			X
FIA_UAU.5/PACE					X				X
FIA_UAU.6/PACE					X				X
FIA_UID.1/PACE					X	X			X
FPT_EMS.1/PACE					X				X
FDP_RIP.1/PACE		X							X
FDP_UCT.1/PACE									X
FDP_UIT.1/PACE									X
FMT_SMR.1/PACE					X	X			X
FMT_MTD.1/PACE		X			X				X
FPT_ITE.2/PACE				X					X
FTP_ITC.1/PACE					X	X			X

Table 31: Mapping between security objectives for the TOE and SFR for package Contactless Interface

- 338 Table 31 above should be taken as extension of Table 24 in order to cover the whole set of security objectives. Hence, the mappings between security objectives and SFRs in the table above are used as *additional* mappings to address the corresponding security objectives.
- 339 All SFR identified with “/PACE” are implementing security functionality for the security objective **O.PACE**.
- 340 The security objective **O.Confidentiality** “Confidentiality of internal data” requires the protection of the confidentiality of sensitive user data and TSF data. The SFR FDP_RIP.1/PACE addresses this security objective as it requires that residual information regarding sensitive data in previously used resources will not be available after its usage. Further, the SFR FMT_MTD.1/PACE requires that the TSF denies everyone the read access to dedicated confidential TSF data as defined in the SFR. The exception of importing a CAN for PACE protocol in PCD role is explained in the application note to FMT_MTD.1/PACE.

341 The security objective **O.TSFDataExport** “Support of TSF data export” requires the correct export of TSF data of the object system excluding confidential TSF data. The SFR FPT_ITE.2/PACE requires the ability of the TOE to export public TSF data and defines conditions for exporting these TSF data.

342 The security objective **O.Authentication** “Authentication of external entities” requires the support of authentication of human users and external devices as well as the ability of the TSF to authenticate itself. The successful authentication using PACE protocol sets the *keyIdentifier* in the *globalSecurityList* or *dfSecurityList*. This objective is addressed by the following SFRs:

- FIA_ATD.1/PACE requires that the TSF maintains dedicated security attributes belonging to individual users.
- FIA_USB.1/PACE requires that the TSF associates the security attribute “authentication state of the PACE terminal” with subjects acting on behalf of that user. Also, the TSF shall enforce rules governing changes of these security attributes by the implementation of commands that perform these changes.
- FIA_UID.1/PACE requires the processing of dedicated actions before a user is identified. Any other actions shall require user identification.
- FIA_UAU.1/PACE requires the processing of dedicated actions before a user is authenticated. Any other actions shall require user authentication.
- FIA_UAU.4/PACE requires the prevention of reuse of authentication data related to the PACE protocol.
- FIA_UAU.5/PACE requires the TSF to support the PACE protocol and secure messaging based on PACE session keys. Further, the TSF shall authenticate all users based on the PACE protocol.
- FIA_UAU.6/PACE requires the TSF to support re-authentication of users under dedicated conditions as given in the SFR.
- FPT_EMS.1/PACE requires that the TOE does not emit any information of sensitive user data and TSF data by emissions and via circuit interfaces.
- FMT_MTD.1/PACE requires that the TSF restricts the ability to change password objects by the implementation of dedicated commands and management functions.
- FTP_ITC.1/PACE requires that the TSF provides a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product established by PACE. The channel provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data against modification and disclosure.
- FMT_SMR.1/PACE requires that the TSF maintains roles and associates users with roles.

343 The security objective **O.AccessControl** “Access Control for Objects” requires the enforcement of an access control policy to restricted objects and devices. Further, the management functionality for the access policy is required. The security attribute of the subject *keyIdentifier* in the *globalSecurityList* or *dfSecurityList* is already described in the access control SFR. This objective is addressed by the following SFRs:

- FMT_SMR.1/PACE requires that the TSF maintains roles and associates users with roles.
- FIA_UID.1/PACE defines the TSF mediated actions allowed before a user is identified. Any other actions shall require user identification.
- FIA_UAU.1/PACE defines the TSF mediated actions before a user is authenticated. Any other actions shall require user authentication.
- FIA_ATD.1/PACE requires that the TSF maintains dedicated security attributes belonging to individual users.

- FIA_USB.1/PACE requires that the TSF associates the security attribute “authentication state of the PACE terminal” with subjects acting on behalf of that user. Also, the TSF shall enforce rules governing changes of these security attributes by the implementation of commands that perform these changes.
- FTP_ITC.1/PACE requires that the TSF provides a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product established by PACE. The channel provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data against modification and disclosure.
- FPT_ITE.2/PACE requires the export of dedicated TSF data but restricts the kind of TSF data that can be exported. Hence, confidential data shall not be exported.

344 The security objective **O.KeyManagement** “Generation and import of keys” requires the ability of the TSF to secure generation, import, distribution, access control and destruction of cryptographic keys. Also, the TSF is required to support the import and export of public keys. This objective is addressed by the SFR FCS_RNG.1/PACE that requires that the TSF provides a physical random number generator of class DRG.4 or PTG.3.

345 The security objective **O.Crypto** “Cryptographic functions” requires the ability of the TSF to implement secure cryptographic algorithms. This security objectives is addressed by the following SFRs that provide additional cryptographic operations:

- FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE requires that the TSF generate cryptographic keys with the Diffie-Hellman-Protocol or ECDH.
- FCS_CKM.4/PACE requires that the TSF destroys cryptographic keys in accordance with a given specific key destruction method.
- FCS_COP.1/PACE.ENC requires that the TSF provides decryption and encryption using AES to be used for secure messaging.
- FCS_COP.1/PACE.MAC requires that the TSF provides computation and verification of cryptographic checksums using the CMAC algorithm to be used for secure messaging.

346 The following table lists the required dependencies of the SFRs of this PP package and gives the concrete SFRs from this document which fulfils the required dependencies.

SFR	dependent on	fulfilled by
FCS_RNG.1/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.
FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE	[FCS_CKM.2 Cryptographic key distribution, or FCS_COP.1 Cryptographic operation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction.	FCS_COP.1/PACE.ENC, FCS_CKM.4/PACE
FCS_CKM.4/PACE	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation],	FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE
FCS_COP.1/PACE.ENC	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or	FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE, FCS_CKM.4/PACE

SFR	dependent on	fulfilled by
	FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	
FCS_COP.1/PACE.MA C	[FDP_ITC.1 Import of user data without security attributes, or FDP_ITC.2 Import of user data with security attributes, or FCS_CKM.1 Cryptographic key generation], FCS_CKM.4 Cryptographic key destruction	FCS_CKM.1/DH.PACE, FCS_CKM.4/PACE
FIA_UAU.1/PACE	FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification.	FIA_UID.1/PACE
FIA_ATD.1/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_UAU.4/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_UAU.5/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_UAU.6/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.
FIA_UID.1/PACE	FIA_UAU.1 Timing of authentication.	FIA_UAU.1/PACE
FIA_USB.1/PACE	FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition	FIA_ATD.1/PACE
FPT_EMS.1/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.
FPT_ITE.2/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.
FTP_ITC.1/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.
FDP_RIP.1/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.
FDP_UCT.1/PACE	[FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, or FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path], [FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control]	FTP_ITC.1/PACE FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACC.1/EF, FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACC.1/KEY,
FDP_UIT.1/PACE	[FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, or FDP_IFC.1 Subset information flow control], [FTP_ITC.1 Inter-TSF trusted channel, or FTP_TRP.1 Trusted path]	FTP_ITC.1/PACE FDP_ACC.1/ MF_DF, FDP_ACC.1/EF, FDP_ACC.1/TEF, FDP_ACC.1/SEF, FDP_ACC.1/KEY,
FMT_SMR.1/PACE	FIA_UID.1 Timing of identification	FIA_UID.1/PACE
FMT_MTD.1/PACE	FMT_SMR.1 Security roles FMT_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions	FMT_SMR.1/PACE, FMT_SMF.1
FPT_ITE.2/PACE	No dependencies.	n. a.

Table 32: Dependencies of the SFRs

9 Package Logical Channel

9.1 TOE Overview

347 Additional to the TOE definition given in section TOE definition and operational usage the TOE is equipped with additional logic channels. The extension is purely functional.

9.2 Security Problem Definition

9.2.1 Assets

Assets

348 The assets do not differ from the assets defined in section 3.1.

Subjects and external entities

349 There are no additional external entities and subjects than those defined in section 3.1.

9.2.2 Threats

350 There are no additional threats than the threats defined in section 3.2.

9.2.3 Organisational Security Policies

351 There are is an additional Organisational Security Policy additional to those defined in section 3.3.

OSP.LogicalChannel

Logical channel

The TOE supports and the operational environment uses logical channels bound to independent subjects.

352 *Application note 56:* The COS specification [21] describes the concept of logical channels in chapter 12.

9.2.4 Assumptions

353 There are no additional Assumptions than the Assumptions defined in section 3.4.

9.3 Security Objectives

354 The Security Objectives for the TOE (section 4.1) and the Security Objectives for Operational Environment (section 4.2) are supplemented for the package contactless interface. Therefore the Security Objective Rationale (section 4.3) is supplemented as well.

355 The TOE shall provide a “Support of more than one logical channel (O.LogicalChannel)” as specified below.

O.LogicalChannel

Support of more than one logical channel

The TOE supports more than one logical channel each bound to an independent subject.

356 The operational environment shall provide a “Use of logical channels (OE.LogicalChannel)” as specified below.

OE.LogicalChannel

Use of logical channels

The operational environment manages logical channels bound to independent subjects for running independent processes at the same time.

357 The security objectives O.LogicalChannel and OE.LogicalChannel implement the OSP.LogicalChannel.

9.4 Security Requirements for Package Logical Channel

358 Additional to the Security Functional Requirements for the TOE defined in section 6.1 the TOE shall meet the following SFR.

359 The TOE shall meet the requirement “User-subject binding – Logical channel (FIA_USB.1/LC)” as specified below.

FIA_USB.1/LC

User-subject binding – Logical channel

Hierarchical to:

No other components.

Dependencies:

FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition

FIA_USB.1.1/LC

The TSF shall associate the following user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of that user:

(1) The authentication state for the context as specified in FIA_USB.1

(2) The authentication state for a context is bound to the logical channel the authentication took place³²⁷.

FIA_USB.1.2/LCs

The TSF shall enforce the following rules on the initial association of user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of users:

(1) If a new logical channel is opened the authentication state is “not authenticated” for all contexts within that logical channel³²⁸.

³²⁷ [assignment: *list of user security attributes*]

FIA_USB.1.3/LC

The TSF shall enforce the following rules governing changes to the user security attributes associated with subjects acting on the behalf of users:

- (1) Every logical channel has its own context. The rules as specified in FIA_USB.1.3 for the context shall be enforced for each logical channel separately.
- (2) After a logical channel is closed or reseted, e.g. by the use of a MANAGE CHANNEL command, the authentication state for all contexts within the closed logical channel must be “not authenticated”
- (3) The execution of a DELETE command has to be rejected if more than one channel is open.
- (4) [assignment: rules for the changing of attributes]³²⁹

360 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Subset access control – Logical channel (FDP_ACC.1/LC)” as specified below.

FDP_ACC.1/LC

Subset access control – Logical channel

Hierarchical to:

No other components.

Dependencies:

FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.

FDP_ACC.1.1/LC

The TSF shall enforce the Logical Channel SFP³³⁰ on

- (1) the subjects FDP_ACF.1/EF and FDP_ACF.1/MF_DF
- (2) the objects
 - a. logical channel.
 - b. objects as defined in FDP_ACF.1/EF.
 - c. objects as defined in FDP_ACF.1/MF_DF;
- (3) the operation by command following
 - a. command SELECT,
 - b. command MANAGE CHANNEL to open, reset and close a logical channel³³¹.

361 The TOE shall meet the requirement “Security attribute based access control – Logical channel (FDP_ACF.1/LC)” as specified below.

FDP_ACF.1/LC

Security attribute based access control – Logical channel

Hierarchical to:

No other components.

Dependencies:

FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control

FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation

FDP_ACF.1.1/LC

The TSF shall enforce Logical Channel SFP³³² to objects based on the following

- (1) the subjects as defined in FDP_ACF.1/EF and FDP_ACF.1/MF_DF with security attribute “logical channel”
- (2) the objects

³²⁸ [assignment: rules for the initial association of attributes]

³²⁹ [assignment: rules for the changing of attributes]

³³⁰ [assignment: access control SFP]

³³¹ [assignment: list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP]

³³² [assignment: access control SFP]

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">a. <u>logical channel with channel number,</u>b. <u>as defined in FDP_ACF.1/EF and FDP_ACF.1/MF_DF with security attribute “shareable”³³³</u>
FDP_ACF.1.2/LC	<p>The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>The command MANAGE CHANNEL is [selection: ALWAYS allowed, [assignment: supported access control rules]].</u>(2) <u>An subject is allowed to open, reset or close a logical channel with channel number higher than 1 if a logical channel is available and the subject fulfils the access conditions for command MANAGE CHANNEL with the corresponding parameter P1.</u>(3) <u>An subject is allowed to select an object as current object in more than one logical channel if it the security attribute “shareable” is set to “True”³³⁴.</u>
FDP_ACF.1.3/LC	<p>The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: <u>none</u>³³⁵.</p>
FDP_ACF.1.4/LC	<p>The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) <u>if the security attribute of an object is set to “not shareable” this object is not accessible as current object in more than one logical channel</u>³³⁶.
362	<p><i>Application note57:</i> The COS specification [21] claims that the security attribute “shareable” is always “True”.</p>
363	<p>The TOE shall meet the requirement “Static attribute initialisation (FMT_MSA.3)” as specified below.</p>
FMT_MSA.3/LC	<p>Static attribute initialisation – Logical channel</p>
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes FMT_SMR.1 Security roles
FMT_MSA.3.1/LC	<p>The TSF shall enforce the <u>Logical Channel SFP</u>³³⁷ to provide <u>restrictive</u>³³⁸ default values for security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP. After a logical channel is opened the security attributes of the subject associated with this logical channel are set as follows</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) currentFolder is root,(2) keyReferenceList, globalSecurityList, globalPasswordList, dfSpecificSecurityList, dfSpecificPasswordList bitSecurityList

³³³ [assignment: list of subjects and objects controlled under the indicated SFP, and for each, the SFP-relevant security attributes, or named groups of SFP-relevant security attributes]

³³⁴ [assignment: rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects]

³³⁵ [assignment: rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects]

³³⁶ [assignment: rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects]

³³⁷ [assignment: access control SFP, information flow control SFP]

³³⁸ [selection, choose one of: restrictive, permissive, [assignment: other property]]

- are empty,
(3) *SessionContext.flagSessionEnabled* to *noSK*,
(4) *seIdentifier* is #1,
(5) *currentFile* is undefined.

FMT_MSA.3.2/LC The TSF shall allow the subjects allowed to execute the command *LOAD APPLICATION*³³⁹ to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

364 The following table provides an overview for security functional requirements coverage also giving an evidence for sufficiency and necessity of the SFRs chosen in the Logical Channel package.

	O.Integrity	O.Confidentiality	O.Resp-COS	O.TSFDataExport	O.Authentication	O.AccessControl	O.KeyManagement	O.Crypto	O.SecureMessaging	O.LogicalChannel
FIA_USB.1/LC						X				X
FDP_ACC.1/LC						X				X
FDP_ACF.1/LC						X				X
FMT_MSA.3/LC						X				X

Table 33: Mapping between security objectives for the TOE and SFR for the package Logical Channels

365 Table 33 above should be taken as extension of Table 24 in order to cover the whole set of security objectives. Hence, the mappings between security objectives and SFRs in the table above are used as *additional* mappings to address the corresponding security objectives.

366 The security objectives **O.AccessControl** “Access Control for Objects” and **O.LogicalChannel** “Support of more than one logical channel” require the enforcement of an access control policy to restricted objects and devices in more than one logical channel. Further, the management functionality for the access policy is required. This security objective is addressed by the following SFRs:

- FIA_USB.1/LC requires that the TSF associates the user authentication state with subjects acting on behalf of that user. Also, the TSF shall enforce rules governing changes of these security attributes by the implementation of commands that perform these changes.
- FDP_ACC.1/LC requires that the TSF enforces an logical channel control policy to restrict operations on dedicated EF and DF objects performed by subjects of the TOE.
- FDP_ACF.1/LC requires that the TSF enforce an logical channel control policy to restrict operations on dedicated EF and DF objects based on a set of rules defined in the SFR. Also, the TSF is required to deny access to dedicated EF and DF objects in case that the security attribute of the object is set to “not sharable”.

³³⁹ [assignment: *the authorised identified roles*]

- FMT_MSA.3/LC requires that the TSF assign restrictive security attributes to the subjects of new opened logical channel.

367 The following table lists the required dependencies of the SFRs of this PP package and gives the concrete SFRs from this document which fulfils the required dependencies.

SFR	dependent on	fulfilled by
FIA_USB.1/LC	FIA_ATD.1 User attribute definition	FIA_ATD.1
FDP_ACC.1/LC	FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control.	FDP_ACF.1/LC
FDP_ACF.1/LC	FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control, FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation	FDP_ACC.1/LC, FMT_MSA.3
FMT_MSA.3/LC	FMT_MSA.1 Management of security attributes, FMT_SMR.1 Security roles	FMT_MSA.1/Life, FMT_MSA.1/PIN, FMT_MSA.1/Auth, FMT_SMR.1

Table 34: Dependencies of the SFRs

10 Annex: Composite Evaluation of Smart Cards as Signature Products based on COS Smart Card Platforms (Informative)

- 368 The TOE of the protection profile in hand may be used as smart card platform for smart cards used as secure signature-creation devices (SSCD) and as parts of signature-creation applications (SCA). The SSCD shall and SCA should be evaluated for approval as signature product according to the German Signature Ordinance [46]. This evaluation may be performed as composite evaluation [8] with a TOE certified conforming to the protection profile in hand as Certified Platform and the object system of the smart card as Application.
- 369 This informative annex discuss how security targets for such composite evaluation may be written on the examples of the electronic Health Card (eHC), electronic health professional card (eHPC) as SSCD and the secure module cards of KT (gSMC-KT) and K (gSMC-K) as part of SCA. It uses the CEN standards [12], [14] and [15] as protection profiles describing security requirements for SSCD.
- 370 Note however, that the German Digital Signature Ordinance does not require conformance to any protection profile in order to evaluate a product for qualified digital signatures. Therefore an ST author may also consider relevant contents from one of these PPs without claiming formal conformance.

10.1 Smart Cards as Secure Signature-creation Devices based COS (Informative)

- 371 The preparation of a smart card as SSCD includes the following steps.
- (1) The personalisation as SSCD comprises the definition of the signatory as authorized user of the signature-creation data in the SSCD i.e. a private signature key.
 - (2) The initialization of the SSCD comprises the loading into or generation by the SSCD of the signature key pair. The SSCD shall implement the private key as signature-creation data and should implement the public key e.g. for verification of the digital signature generated with the private key as self-test.
 - (3) The generation of the qualified certificate by Certification Service Provider for qualified certificates (CSP-QC) containing the signature verification data (SVD) which correspond to signature creation data (SCD) under the control of the signatory, the name of the signatory or a pseudonym, which is to be identified as such, an indication of the beginning and end of the validity period of the certificate. The qualified certificate shall be verifiable by means of the directory services of the CSP-QC. The CSP-QC SSCD should load certificate info or the certificate into the SSCD for signatory convenience.
- 372 The following sections assume that the eHC and the eHPC implement the MF and the DF.QES as defined in the object system specifications [22] for eHC and [23] for eHPC.³⁴⁰

³⁴⁰ Note the smart card platform, the MF and the DF.QES define the security features of the eHC and eHPC in respect of the qualified electronic signature. The other parts of the object system must not affect this security functionality. The MF and the DF.QES specification are expected being stable and independent on updates of the object system specifications.

373 The ST for the eHC and eHPC as SSCD may claim conformance to the protection profile in hand and appropriate SSCD protection profile depending on the method of the initialization and the method of use as SSCD.

10.1.1 eHC as SSCD

374 The eHC are issued by the German health insurance companies to patients insured by them for use health care services. If the patient as cardholder wishes the eHC shall be prepared by a CSP-QC as SSCD where the patient is the signatory.

375 The object system specification of the eHC [22] already specifies in DF.QES

- (1) the user Signatory by means of PIN.QES,
- (2) the signature-creation data as Pr.CH.QES.R2048 (mandatory) and optional Pr.CH.QES.R3072 and Pr.CH.QES.E384
- (3) the EF.C.CH.QES.R2048 and optional for other certificates.

376 The role Signatory is different from role cardholder defined by regular password PIN.CH in MF and the roles defined by multi-reference password referencing to the secret of the PIN.CH.

377 The eHC may be initialized in three different ways:

- (1) The CSP-QC may generate the signature key pair and load the private key as signature-creation data into the SSCD. In this case the ST author should claim conformance to the Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 3: Device with key import, BSI-CC-PP-0075 [13]. The CSP-QC will send the public key to the certificate-generation application in its trusted environment.
- (2) The CSP-QC may generate the signature key pair by the eHC and export the public key from the SSCD to the certificate-generation application in its trusted environment. In this case the ST author should claim conformance to the Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 2: Device with key generation, BSI-CC-PP-0059 [12].
- (3) The CSP-QC or the signatory may generate the signature key pair by the eHC and export the public key from the SSCD to the certificate-generation application through trusted channel after delivery of the smart card to the cardholder. In this case the ST author should claim conformance to the Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 4: Extension for device with key generation and trusted communication with certificate generation application, BSI-CC-PP-0071 [14].

378 Note the object specification of the eHC [22] does not specifies the access control rule for Pr.CH.QES.x and command GENERATE ASYMMETRIC KEY PAIR and therefore allows for product and CSP-QC specific solutions.

379 The regular password PIN.QES shall be protected by setting the security attribute *transportStatus* to *Transport-PIN* in time of delivery of the eHC to the cardholder and before personalization as SSCD by changing the *transportStatus* to *Reguläres Passwort*. The security attribute “*SCD operational*” defined in the SSCD PP [13] and [12] and referenced by conformance claim [14] is implemented by means of the security attribute *transportStatus* of the PIN.QES, where the value *Transport-PIN* of the security attribute *transportStatus* meets the value “no” of the security

attribute “*SCD operational*” and the value *Reguläres Passwort* of the security attribute *transportStatus* meets the value “*yes*” of the security attribute “*SCD operational*”.

380 The access control rules of the signature-creation data Pr.CH.QES.R2048, Pr.CH.QES.R3072 and Pr.CH.QES.E384 for the signature-creation function by means of command PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE defined in [22] meet the SFR FDP_ACF.1/Signature_Creation as defined in the SSCD PP [12], [13] and [14].

10.1.2 eHPC as SSCD

381 The eHPC is mandatory issued as SSCD. The eHPC supports

- (1) local PIN entry, i.e. it is assumed that the PIN is entered at the same smart card terminal as the eHPC is used and send to the eHPC in clear text,
- (2) remote PIN entry, i.e. the smart card terminal used as PIN entry device transmits the PIN through a trusted channel to the eHPC in another (or even the same) smart card terminal,
- (3) single signature-creation, i.e. creation of only one signature after authentication as signatory, and
- (4) batch signature creation, i.e. creation of one or more signature after authentication as signatory.

382 The object system specification of the eHPC [23] already specifies in DF.QES

- (1) the user Signatory by means of PIN.QES,
- (2) the signature-creation data as Pr.CH.QES.R2048 (mandatory) and optional Pr.CH.QES.R3072 and Pr.CH.QES.E384
- (3) the EF.C.CH.QES.R2048 and optional for other certificates.

383 The role Signatory is different from role cardholder defined by regular password PIN.CH in MF and the roles defined by multi-reference password referencing to the secret of the PIN.CH.

384 The eHPC may be initialized in three different ways:

- (1) The CSP-QC may generate the signature key pair and load the private key as signature-creation data into the SSCD. In this case the ST author should claim conformance to the Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 3: Device with key import, BSI-CC-PP-0075 [13]. The CSP-QC will send the public key to the certificate-generation application in its trusted environment.
- (2) The CSP-QC may generate the signature key pair by the eHPC and export the public key from the SSCD to the certificate-generation application in its trusted environment. In this case the ST author should claim conformance to the Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 2: Device with key generation, BSI-CC-PP-0059 [12].
- (3) The CSP-QC or the signatory may generate the signature key pair by the eHPC and export the public key from the SSCD to the certificate-generation application through trusted channel after delivery of the smart card to the cardholder. In this case the ST author should

- claim conformance to the Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 4: Extension for device with key generation and trusted communication with certificate generation application, BSI-CC-PP-0071 [14].
- 385 Note the object specification of the eHPC [23] does not specifies the access control rule for Pr.CH.QES.x and command GENERATE ASYMMETRIC KEY PAIR but leave the access control rule up to the CSP-QS. Because of mandatory initialization of eHPC as SSCD the case is unlikely of practical use.
- 386 The regular password PIN.QES shall be protected by setting the security attribute *transportStatus* to *Transport-PIN* in time of delivery of the eHPC to the cardholder and before personalization as SSCD by changing the *transportStatus* to *Reguläres Passwort*. The security attribute “*SCD operational*” defined in the SSCD PP [13] and [12] and referenced by conformance claim [14] is implemented by means of the security attribute *transportStatus* of the PIN.QES, where the value *Transport-PIN* of the security attribute *transportStatus* meets the value “no” of the security attribute “*SCD operational*” and the value *Reguläres Passwort* of the security attribute *transportStatus* meets the value “yes” of the security attribute “*SCD operational*”.
- 387 The PIN authentication using a remote smart card terminal as PIN entry device requires the confidentiality protection of the PIN transmitted between this terminal and the eHPC. This confidentiality protection is enabled by the Konnektor controlling mutual authentication between gSMC-KT as PIN sender and eHPC as PIN receiver and establishing a secure messaging channel between them. Note because the eHPC supports both local PIN entry and remote PIN entry and cannot distinguish between them the eHPC does not enforce secure messaging as PIN receiver for the PIN.QES.
- 388 The access control rules for the single signature creation function with signature-creation data Pr.CH.QES.R2048, Pr.CH.QES.R3072 and Pr.CH.QES.E384 and command PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE defined in [23] requires successful authentication with PIN.QES only and meet the SFR FDP_ACF.1/Signature_Creation as defined in the SSCD PP [12], [13] and [14].
- 389 The access control rules for the batch signature creation function with signature-creation data Pr.CH.QES.R2048, Pr.CH.QES.R3072 and Pr.CH.QES.E384 and command PSO COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE defined in [23] enforces
- (1) successful authentication of the signatory with PIN.QES, and
 - (2) successful device authentication with CHA ‘D2760000400033’, i.e. gSMC-K as representative of the SCA of the Konnektor as sender of the data to be signed (DTBS) (cf. chapter 10.2.2 gSMC-K as part of the SCA of the Konnektor for details) and secure messaging with protection of integrity and confidentiality.
- 390 The security requirements for protected communication between SSCD (with key generation) and SCA are described in the prEN 14169-5:2012: Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 5: Extension for device with key generation and trusted communication with signature creation application, BSI-CC-PP-0072 [15]. The ST writer for TOE as SSCD with key import (cf. [13]) may use the SFR in analogous way.
- 391 Note the BSI-CC-PP-0072 [15] requires the SSCD or human interface device (i.e. the smart card terminal) to initiate the trusted channel for protection of the signature verification data as required by the method of authentication used (i.e. of confidentiality and integrity in case of PIN), cf. SFR FTP_ITC.1/VAD. Furthermore this PP requires the SSCD to detect manipulation and insertion of DTBS received, cf. FDP_UIT.1/DTBS, and establishment of trusted channel between SCA and

SSCD for signature-creation cf. FTP_ITC.1/DTBS. Therefore the ST writer **cannot** claim conformance to BSI-CC-PP-0072 [15] for the ST describing the eHCP as SSCD.

392 The ST writer shall instead describe more precise security objectives for the operational environment to address optional usage of trusted channel for remote PIN entry like this.

OE.TC_PIN

Trusted channel for remote PIN entry

The PIN entry device shall authenticate themselves as PIN sender and the TOE as PIN receiver, and send the PIN of the signatory in trusted channel to the TOE.

393 The ST writer may describe more precise security objectives for the TOE and the operational environment and similar but not identical SFR in order

- (1) to allow for single signature-creation without trusted channel for DTBS and
- (2) to enforce the authentication and the transmission of DTBS in the established trusted channel for as access control condition for batch signature-creation

like these.

394 The TOE shall fulfil the security objective “Batch signature support (O.BatchSignature)” as specified below.

O.BatchSignature

Batch signature support

The TOE enforces the authentication of SCA and the transmission of DTBS in the established trusted channel for as access control condition for batch signature-creation.

395 The operational environment shall fulfil the security objective “Batch signature control (OE.BatchSignature)” as specified below.

OE.BatchSignature

Batch signature control

The SCA authenticates themselves to the TOE and transmits the DTBS for batch signature-creation in the established trusted channel to the TOE.

396 The TOE shall meet the requirements “Subset Access Control (FDP_ACC.1)” and “Security attribute based access control (FDP_ACF.1)” as specified below.

397 **FDP_ACC.1/BatchSign Subset access control – Batch signature-creation**

Hierarchical to: No other components.

Dependencies: FDP_ACF.1 Security attribute based access control

FDP_ACC.1.1/
BatchSign The TSF shall enforce the Signature-creation SFP³⁴¹ on
1. subjects:
(a) signatory.

³⁴¹ [assignment: *access control SFP*]

- (b) signature-creation application.
 - 2. objects:
 - (a) Signature-creation data PrK.HP.QES,
 - (b) DTBS-representation.
 - 3. operations:
 - (a) command PSO: COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE.³⁴²
- 398 **FDP_ACF.1/BatchSign Security attribute based access control– Signature-creation**
- Hierarchical to: No other components.
- Dependencies: FDP_ACC.1 Subset access control
FMT_MSA.3 Static attribute initialisation
- FDP_ACF.1.1/
BatchSign The TSF shall enforce the Signature-creation SFP³⁴³ to objects based on the following:
- 1. subjects:
 - (a) human user with authentication status,
 - (b) signature-creation application with authentication status,
 - 2. objects:
 - (a) Signature-creation data PrK.HC.QES with security attribute *lifeCycleStatus* set to “Operation state(activated)”.
 - (b) DTBS-representation³⁴⁴.
- FDP_ACF.1.2/
BatchSign The TSF shall enforce the following rules to determine if an operation among controlled subjects and controlled objects is allowed:
- 1. the human user successfully authenticated with PIN.QES is allowed to create 1 signatures using PrK.HP.QES with *lifeCycleStatus* set to “Operation state(activated)” by means of the command PSO: COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE in security environment #1
 - 2. the human user successful authenticated with PIN.QES and using signature-creation application successfully authenticated with CHA ‘D2760000400033’ with trusted channel to the TOE is allowed to create n signatures using PrK.HP.QES with *lifeCycleStatus* set to “Operation state(activated)” by means of the command PSO: COMPUTE DIGITAL SIGNATURE in security environment #2³⁴⁵.
- FDP_ACF.1.3/
BatchSign The TSF shall explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects based on the following additional rules: none³⁴⁶.
- FDP_ACF.1.4/
BatchSign The TSF shall explicitly deny access of subjects to objects based on the rule:
- 1. to create signature without security attribute *lifeCycleStatus* of PrK.HP.QES set to “Operation state(activated)”.

³⁴² [assignment: *list of subjects, objects, and operations among subjects and objects covered by the SFP*]

³⁴³ [assignment: *access control SFP*]

³⁴⁴ [assignment: *list of subjects and objects controlled under the indicated SFP, and for each, the SFP-relevant security attributes, or named groups of SFP-relevant security attributes*]

³⁴⁵ [assignment: *rules governing access among controlled subjects and controlled objects using controlled operations on controlled objects*]

³⁴⁶ [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly authorise access of subjects to objects*]

2. to create more than one signature with PrK.HP.QES after successful authentication with PIN.QES by sending the DTBS-representation without secure messaging provided by signature-creation application successfully authenticated with CHA 'D2760000400033'³⁴⁷.

399 The secure messaging channel may be described like this:

FTP_ITC.1/ SM_BatchSig	Inter-TSF trusted channel – Secure Messaging for batch signature
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FTP_ITC.1.1/ SM_BatchSig	The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from modification or disclosure.
FTP_ITC.1.2/ SM_BatchSig	The TSF shall permit <u>the TSF</u> ³⁴⁸ to initiate communication via the trusted channel.
FTP_ITC.1.3/ SM_BatchSig	The TSF shall initiate enforce ³⁴⁹ communication via the trusted channel with SK4SM for <u>receiving of commands from the SCA and sending responses to the SCA</u> ³⁵⁰ .

400 The selection in the element FPT_ITC.1.2/SM_BatchSig is based on the first command GET CHALLENGE sent to the TOE in order to initiate the mutual authentication protocol generating the secure messaging keys SK4SM of the TSF (cf [21], chapter 15.4.1).

401 The refinement in the element FPT_ITC.1.3/SM_BatchSig describes that the eHPC uses secure messaging with SK4SM. Note the COS specification distinguishes (simplified) between

- (1) secure messaging for smart cards
 - (a) verifying the MAC of received commands and decrypting received data and
 - (b) encrypting and MAC calculating the responses, and
- (2) trusted channel for smart cards
 - (a) encrypting the data of commands and MAC calculating for the commands and
 - (b) MAC verification and decrypting the data of the responses.

The CC terminology summarizes the communication under the term “trusted channel”.

³⁴⁷ [assignment: *rules, based on security attributes, that explicitly deny access of subjects to objects*]

³⁴⁸ [selection: *the TSF, another trusted IT product*]

³⁴⁹ Refinement: The trusted IT product is the terminal. The word “initiate” is changed to ‘enforce’, as the TOE is a passive device that can not initiate the communication. All the communication are initiated by the Terminal, and the TOE enforce the trusted channel.

³⁵⁰ [assignment: *list of functions for which a trusted channel is required*]

10.2 Smart Cards as Part of Signature-creation Application based on COS Smart Card Platforms (Informative)

10.2.1 gSMC-KT as part of Electronic Health Card Terminal

402 The Electronic Health Card Terminal (eHCT) may be used as PIN entry device for the PIN.QES of the signatory to be sent to the SSCD eHPC. In this case the eHKT is part of the SCA. The eHKT may use gSMC-KT for

- protection of confidentiality and integrity of the PIN.QES by sending the PIN commands through a trusted channel,
- protected storage of asymmetric key material and other security critical data in DF.KT used for establishing the TLS channel between the eHKT and the Konnektor as describe in the Technical guidance for batch signature creation [18].

The security functionality of trusted channel used by the gSMC-KT is already described in chapter 7 Package Crypto Box.

403 The private key for authentication as PIN sender to the SSCD eHPC is PrK.SMC.AUTD_RPS_CVC.R2048 and PrK.SMC.AUTD_RPS_CVC.E256 for the SMC-KT stored in MF. The authentication reference data are certificates C.SMC.AUTD_RPS_CVC.R2048 and C.SMC.AUTD_RPS_CVC.E256 for the SMC-KT stored also in MF. The establishment of the trusted channel between these smart cards is controlled by the Konnektor. The ST writer may describe the SFR for this trusted channel by means of the component FTP_ITC.1 like this.

404 The trusted channel provided by the gSMC-KT may be described like this:

FTP_ITC.1/ TC_PIN	Inter-TSF trusted channel – Trusted channel for batch signature
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FTP_ITC.1.1/ TC_PIN	The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from modification or disclosure.
FTP_ITC.1.2/ TC_PIN	The TSF shall permit <u>another trusted IT product</u> ³⁵¹ to initiate communication via the trusted channel.
FTP_ITC.1.3/ TC_PIN	The TSF shall initiate enforce ³⁵² communication via the trusted channel with SK4TC for <u>sending of PIN commands to the SSCD and receiving responses from the SSCD.</u> ³⁵³

³⁵¹ [selection: *the TSF, another trusted IT product*]

³⁵² Refinement: The trusted IT product is the terminal. The word “initiate” is changed to ‘enforce’, as the TOE is a passive device that can not initiate the communication. All the communication are initiated by the Terminal, and the TOE enforce the trusted channel.

³⁵³ [assignment: *list of functions for which a trusted channel is required*]

405 The private keys PrK.SMKT.AUTD_RPS_CVC.R2048 and PrK.SMKT.AUTD_RPS_CVC.E256 are used for the command PSO DECIPHER by the eHKT. The certificates C.SMKT.AUTD_RPS_CVC.R2048 and C.SMKT.AUTD_RPS_CVC.E256 are used by the external device as authentication reference data for the eHKT.

10.2.2 gSMC-K as part of the SCA of the Konnektor

406 The Konnektor implements a SCA and includes a gSMC-K for

- protection of confidentiality and integrity of the DTBS by means of a trusted channel for sending the signature-creation commands and receiving the digital signature for batch signature-creation by the eHPC (cf. chapter 10.1.2 eHPC as SSCD),
- protected storage of asymmetric key material and other security critical data in DF.KT used for establishing the TLS channel between the eHKT and the Konnektor as describe in the Technical guidance for batch signature creation [18].

The security functionality of trusted channel used by the gSMC-KT is already described in chapter 7 Package Crypto Box.

407 .The private key for authentication gSMC-K as SCA is PrK.SAK.AUTD_CVC.E256 (alternative PrK.SAK.AUTD_CVC.E384) stored in DF.SAK. The authentication reference data are certificates C.SAK.AUTD_CVC.E256 (optional C.SAK.AUTD_CVC.E384) stored also in DF.SAK. The establishment of the trusted channel between these smart cards is controlled by the SCA. The ST writer may describe the SFR for this trusted channel provided by the gSMC-K like this.

408 The trusted channel be described like this:

FTP_ITC.1/ TC_BatchSig	Inter-TSF trusted channel – Trusted channel for batch signature
Hierarchical to:	No other components.
Dependencies:	No dependencies.
FTP_ITC.1.1/ TC_BatchSig	The TSF shall provide a communication channel between itself and another trusted IT product that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from modification or disclosure.
FTP_ITC.1.2/ TC_BatchSig	The TSF shall permit <u>another trusted IT product</u> ³⁵⁴ to initiate communication via the trusted channel.
FTP_ITC.1.3/ TC_BatchSig	The TSF shall initiate enforce ³⁵⁵ communication via the trusted channel with SK4TC for <u>sending of commands to the SSCD and receiving responses from the SSCD.</u> ³⁵⁶

³⁵⁴ [selection: *the TSF, another trusted IT product*]

³⁵⁵ Refinement: The trusted IT product is the terminal. The word “initiate” is changed to ‘enforce’, as the TOE is a passive device that can not initiate the communication. All the communication are initiated by the Terminal, and the TOE enforce the trusted channel.

³⁵⁶ [assignment: *list of functions for which a trusted channel is required*]

11 Acronyms

409 The terminology and abbreviations of Common Criteria version 3.1 [1], [2], [3], Revision 4 and the specification [21] apply.

Acronyms	Term
CAP	Composed Assurance Package
CC	Common Criteria
CCRA	Arrangement on the Recognition of Common Criteria Certificates in the field of IT Security
CM	Configuration Management
COS	Card operating system
CSP-QC	Certification Service Provider for qualified certificates
CVC	Card verifiable certificate
EAL	Evaluation Assurance Level
EF	elementary file
DF	Folder, i.e. Application, Dedicated file and Application Dedicated file
eHC	Electronic health care card (elektronische Gesundheitskarte)
eHCT	Electronic Health Card Terminal
eHPC	Electronic professional card (elektronischer Heilberufsausweis)
IC	Integrated Circuit
MF	Master file
OS	Operating System
OSP	Organisational Security Policy
PC	Personal Computer
PCD	Proximity Coupling Device (as defined in [16] part 2)
PICC	Proximity Integrated Circuit Chip (as defined in [16] part 2)
PKI	Public Key Infrastructure
PP	Protection Profile
SAR	Security Assurance Requirement
SCA	Signature creation applications
SCD	Signature creation data
SEF	Structured elementary file
SFP	Security Function Policy
SFR	Security Functional Requirement
SICP	Secure integrated chip platform
SMC-B	Secure modul card type B
SMC-K	Secure modul card type K
SMC-KT	Secure modul card type KT
SPD	Security Problem Definition
SSCD	Secure signature-creation device
SVD	Signature verification data

Acronyms	Term
ST	Security Target
TEF	transparent elementary file
TOE	Target of Evaluation
TSF	TOE Security Functionality
TSFI	TSF Interface

12 Bibliography

Common Criteria

- [1] Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 1: Introduction and General Model; CCMB-2012-09-001, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012
- [2] Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 2: Security Functional Components; CCMB-2012-09-002, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012
- [3] Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Part 3: Security assurance components; CCMB-2012-09-003, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012
- [4] Common Methodology for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Evaluation Methodology; CCMB-2012-09-004, Version 3.1, Revision 4, September 2012
- [5] AIS20: Functionality classes and evaluation methodology for deterministic random number generators, Version 2.1, 02.12.2011, Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik
- [6] AIS31: Functionality classes and evaluation methodology for true (physical) random number generators, Version 2.1, 02.12.2011, Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik
- [7] W. Killmann, W. Schindler, „A proposal for: Functionality classes for random number generators“, Version 2.0, September 18, 2011
- [8] CC Supporting Document, Composite product evaluation for Smart Cards and similar devices, September 2007, Version 1.0, Revision 1, CCDB-2007-09-001
- [9] Supporting Document Mandatory Technical Document: The Application of CC to Integrated Circuits, March 2009, Version 3.0, Revision 1, CCDB-2009-03-002
- [10] Supporting Document Guidance, Smartcard Evaluation, February 2010, Version 2.0, CCDB-2010-03-001

Protection Profiles

- [11] Protection Profile Security IC Platform Protection Profile developed by Atmel, Infineon Technologies AG, NXP Semiconductors, Renesas Technology Europe Ltd., STMicrocontrolles, Registered and Certified by Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik (BSI) under the reference BSI-PP-0035, Version 1.0, 15.06.2007
- [12] prEN 14169-2:2012: Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 2: Device with key generation, BSI-CC-PP-0059
- [13] prEN 14169-3:2012: Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 3: Device with key import, BSI-CC-PP-0075
- [14] prEN 14169-4:2012: Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 4: Extension for device with key generation and trusted communication with certificate generation application, BSI-CC-PP-0071
- [15] prEN 14169-5:2012: Protection profiles for secure signature creation device — Part 5: Extension for device with key generation and trusted communication with signature creation application, BSI-CC-PP-0072

Technical Guidelines and Specifications

- [16] Technical Guideline TR-03110 Advanced Security Mechanisms for Machine Readable Travel Documents Part1 – eMRTDs with BAC/PACEv2 and EACv1, Part 2, Part 2 – Extended Access Control Version 2 (EACv2), Password Authenticated Connection Establishment

- (PACE), and Restricted Identification (RI), Part 3 – Common Specifications, TR-03110, version 2.10, 24.03.2012, Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik (BSI)
- [17] Technical Guideline TR-03111 Elliptic Curve Cryptography, TR-03111, version 2.0, 28.08.2012, Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik (BSI)
- [18] Technische Richtlinie TR-03114 Stapelsignatur mit dem Heilberufsausweis, BSI, Version: 2.0, 22.10.2007
- [19] Technische Richtlinie TR-03116, eCard-Projekte der Bundesregierung, Version 3.16 vom 07.08.2012, Bundesamt für Sicherheit in der Informationstechnik (BSI)
- [20] Technische Richtlinie TR-03143 „eHealth G2-COS Konsistenz-Prüftool“ (in Vorbereitung)³⁵⁷
- [21] Einführung der Gesundheitskarte, Spezifikation des Card Operating System (COS), Elektrische Schnittstelle, Version 3.1.0 vom 10.01.2013, gematik Gesellschaft für Telematikanwendungen der Gesundheitskarte GmbH
- [22] Einführung der Gesundheitskarte Spezifikation der elektronischen Gesundheitskarte eGK-Objektsystem, Version: 3.1.1 vom 23.01.2013, gematik Gesellschaft für Telematikanwendungen der Gesundheitskarte GmbH
- [23] Einführung der Gesundheitskarte Spezifikation des elektronischen Heilberufsausweises HBA-Objektsystem, 3.1.0 vom 10.01.2013, gematik Gesellschaft für Telematikanwendungen der Gesundheitskarte GmbH
- [24] Einführung der Gesundheitskarte Spezifikation der Secure Module Card SMC-B Objektsystem, Version 3.1.0 vom 10.01.2013, gematik Gesellschaft für Telematikanwendungen der Gesundheitskarte GmbH
- [25] Einführung der Gesundheitskarte Spezifikation der gSMC-K Objektsystem, Version 3.1.0 vom 10.01.2013, gematik Gesellschaft für Telematikanwendungen der Gesundheitskarte GmbH
- [26] Einführung der Gesundheitskarte Spezifikation gSMC-KT Objektsystem, Version 3.1.0 vom 10.01.2013, gematik Gesellschaft für Telematikanwendungen der Gesundheitskarte GmbH
- [27] International Civil Aviation Organization, ICAO MACHINE READABLE TRAVEL DOCUMENTS, TECHNICAL REPORT, Supplemental Access Control for Machine Readable Travel Documents, Version 1.00, November 2010

Cryptography

- [28] ISO/IEC 7816-3: 2006 (2nd edition), Identification cards — Integrated circuit cards with contacts — Part 3: Electrical interface and transmission protocols
- [29] ISO/IEC 7816-4: 2013 (2nd edition) Identification cards — Integrated circuit cards— Part 4: Organisation, security and commands for interchange
- [30] ISO/IEC 7816-8: 2004 (2nd edition) Identification cards — Integrated circuit cards— Part 8: Commands for security operations
- [31] ISO/IEC 9796-2:2010 Information technology -- Security techniques -- Digital signature schemes giving message recovery -- Part 2: Integer factorization based mechanisms
- [32] ISO/IEC 9797-1 Information technology – Security techniques – Message Authentication Codes (MACs) – Part 1: Mechanisms using a block cipher

³⁵⁷ please note that this Technical Guideline may annually be updated, see www.bsi.bund.de (e.g. Publikationen -> Technische Richtlinien -> Technische Richtlinie fuer die eCard-Projekte der Bundesregierung (BSI TR-03116)).

- [33] Federal Information Processing Standards Publication 197, ADVANCED ENCRYPTION STANDARD (AES), U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE/National Institute of Standards and Technology, November 26, 2001
- [34] PKCS #1: RSA Cryptography Standard, RSA Laboratories, Version 2.2, October 27, 2012 (<http://www.rsa.com/rsalabs/node.asp?id=2125>)
- [35] PKCS #3: Diffie-Hellman Key-Agreement Standard, An RSA Laboratories Technical Note, Version 1.4, Revised November 1, 1993
- [36] Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes of Operation: The CMAC Mode for Authentication, NIST Special Publication 800-38B, National Institute of Standards and Technology, May 2005
- [37] Federal Information Processing Standards Publication 180-4 SECURE HASH STANDARD U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE/National Institute of Standards and Technology, 2011 February, 11
- [38] NIST SP 800-67, Recommendation for the Triple Data Encryption Algorithm (TDEA) Block Cipher, National Institute of Standards and Technology
- [39] American National Standard X9.62-2005, Public Key Cryptography for the Financial Services Industry, The Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA), November 16, 2005
- [40] American National Standard X9.63-2001, Public Key Cryptography for the Financial Services Industry, Key Agreement and Key Transport Using Elliptic Curve Cryptography, November 16, 2005
- [41] Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) Brainpool Standard Curves and Curve Generation, RFC 5639, March 2010, <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5639>
- [42] ANSI X9.62 Public Key Cryptography for the Financial Services Industry, The Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA), 2005

Other Sources

- [43] ISO 14443, Identification cards – Contactless integrated circuit(s) cards – Proximity cards, 2000
- [44] ISO 7498-2 (1989): ‘Information processing systems - Open Systems Interconnection - Basic Reference Model - Part 2: Security Architecture’
- [45] Law Governing Framework Conditions for Electronic Signatures of 16 May 2001 (Federal Law Gazette I page 876), last amended by Article 4 of the Act of 17 July 2009 (Federal Law Gazette I page 2091)
- [46] Ordinance on Electronic Signature of 16 November 2001 (Federal Law Gazette I page 3074), last amended by the Act of 15 November 2010 (Federal Law Gazette I page 2631)